

# BARTOLOMEO PLATINA: LIVES OF THE POPES PAUL II

An Intermediate Reader of Renaissance Latin  
Latin Text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

Thomas G. Hendrickson  
Alexandra B. Berman  
Pascal Croak  
Daniel Gridley  
Sebastian Herrera  
Jin Lee  
Graham Rigby  
John Robinson  
Gabriela C. Sommer  
Kent Ueno  
James Whittemore

Bartolomeo Platina: Lives of the Popes, Paul II: An Intermediate Reader of Renaissance Latin: Latin Text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2017 Faenum Publishing, Ltd.

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher. The authors have made a version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at [www.creativecommons.org](http://www.creativecommons.org).

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter and distribute this work under the following conditions:

1. You must attribute the work to the author (but not in a way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
2. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
3. If you alter, transform or build up this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-10: 1940997968

ISBN-13: 9781940997964

Published by Faenum Publishing, Ltd.

Cover Design: Evan Hayes

Fonts: Garamond

[editor@faenumpublishing.com](mailto:editor@faenumpublishing.com)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgements.....	v
Introduction	
1. The need for a student edition of Platina's <i>Paul II</i> .....	vii
2. Bartolomeo Platina and his clash with Paul II .....	viii
3. <i>The Lives of the Popes</i> .....	xi
4. Structure and content of <i>Paul II</i> .....	xii
5. Editorial principles I: Constitution of the text.....	xviii
6. Editorial principles II: Orthography.....	xxi
7. Grammatical and stylistic notes on Platina and Renaissance Latin ..	xxiv
8. A note on the running glossary and commentary .....	xxvi
Bibliography.....	xxix
Map of Italy, c. 1450 .....	xxxii
Timeline of Events .....	xxxiii
Abbreviations .....	xxxv
Text, with Running Glossary and Commentary .....	3
Common Vocabulary List.....	141



## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Dartmouth College and its Classics Department, which provided the opportunity for the authors to come together on this project under the auspices of a Renaissance Latin seminar organized by Hendrickson. The Whiting Foundation furnished support for Hendrickson to undertake preparatory work at the Ludwig Boltzmann Institute for Neo-Latin Studies, and we are grateful for the generosity of both institutions. We also owe a debt of thanks to the Renaissance Society of America, whose Paul Oskar Kristeller grant afforded Hendrickson the chance to examine the manuscripts in Italy.



# INTRODUCTION

## 1. The need for a student edition of Platina's *Paul II*

Renaissance Latin has become a burgeoning field. The historical importance and literary quality of Renaissance Latin (or Neo-Latin, as it is also called) is more apparent than ever. As the field has grown, its scholarly resources have grown as well. The I Tatti series has been publishing facing Latin/English editions (similar to Loeks), and many scholars have been making critical editions of the texts that have never been edited. Four major handbooks have appeared in the last four years: *Brill's Encyclopaedia of the Neo-Latin World*, the *Oxford Handbook of Neo-Latin*, the *Geschichte der neulateinischen Literatur*, and the *Guide to Neo-Latin Literature*. Pedagogical resources have not kept pace.

There is an almost shocking lack of tools for intermediate Latinists and those who teach them. The bilingual I Tatti volumes represent a big step forward in making Renaissance Latin texts available, but they lack grammatical and lexical explanations. Moreover, many teachers (and students) find it counter-productive to be looking constantly at a translation as they try to read the Latin. As for texts geared specifically toward intermediate readers of Latin, they can be counted on one hand.<sup>1</sup> Given the abundance and variety of Latin works from the Renaissance, these few (excellent) editions seem a small party. Many students would enjoy reading Latin from the Renaissance, and many teachers would enjoy bringing it into the classroom. Such Latinists form the primary audience for this text. There may also be some scholars and students of the Renaissance who have only a basic level of Latin, and it is hoped that they too might find it to be of some use.

For the Latinist interested in expanding her base of knowledge to include humanism and the Renaissance, there are few better texts than Platina's *Life of Paul II*. The *Paul II* is part of Platina's larger *Lives of the Popes*, which was a kind of "national history" (to abuse the term) for the Renaissance Papacy.<sup>2</sup> Platina's *Paul*

---

1 A few notable examples: the *Bryn Mawr Latin Commentaries* series has editions of Petrarch's *Selected Letters* (2002, ed. C. Kallendorf) and Erasmus's *Praise of Folly* (1991, ed. J. Collins); Bolchazy-Carducci has a *Latin of New Spain* reader (2016, ed. R. Williams) and the *Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, from Antiquity to the Renaissance* (2004, ed. Minkova and Tunberg) and Sophron has The Neo-Latin Reader (2016, M. Riley).

2 Anthony D'Elia is producing a version of the *Lives of the Popes* (in three volumes) for I Tatti (see bibliography), whose completion we eagerly await. We felt that an intermediate reader, with grammatical aids and without a translation, would still have its own value.

## Bartolomeo Platina

*II* introduces readers to key institutions like the Papal Curia and the Roman Academy. The text is animated by the controversies stemming from the rediscovery of classical literature. These controversies involve such issues as homoeroticism, republicanism, and disputes about the immortality of the soul.

In Platina's telling, the defining controversy of Paul's pontificate was his conflict with the humanists of Rome. Paul imprisoned and tortured the members of the Roman Academy, accusing them of treason and heresy. The humanists were eventually freed, and among them was Platina himself, Paul's future biographer. A remarkable aspect of Platina's *Paul II* is that the author himself is a character in the story. Indeed, the biographer's conflicts with his subject frame the narrative. The story begins with Paul's dismissal of Platina and the other *abbreviatores* (many of them humanists) from the Papal Curia; the climax of the *Life* is the confrontation between the biographer and his subject over the meaning and value of humanism, and over its compatibility with Christianity.

## 2. Bartolomeo Platina and his clash with Paul II<sup>3</sup>

Bartolomeo Sacchi (1421-1481) took the name “Platina” from his hometown of Piadena. He spent four years as a mercenary, serving under the *condottieri* Francesco Sforza and Niccolò Piccinino.<sup>4</sup> Platina subsequently studied and taught in Mantua at the school that Vittorino da Feltre had started a generation earlier. There he developed a relationship with the ruling Gonzaga family, whose members would act as his patrons throughout his life. Platina next went to Florence in order to improve his Greek by studying under John Argyropoulos. In 1462 he came to Rome where he bought a position as an abbreviator.

It was Platina's work as an abbreviator that first brought him into conflict with Paul II. The abbreviators worked in the chancery (*Cancellaria Apostolica*), where they had a role in the drafting of papal bulls (*litterae apostolicae*).<sup>5</sup> The practice of buying and selling (non-spiritual) positions had been steadily becoming more prevalent in the Papal Curia, as it had in secular courts as well. Platina had been hired by Pope Pius II (born Enea Silvio Piccolomini), who was himself a humanist and who, in taking the name Pius, became *Pius Aeneas* (Enea). Paul II (Pietro Barbo), who succeeded Pius II in 1464, dismissed the abbreviators whom Pius had hired. They would be reimbursed what they had paid for the office, but they

---

<sup>3</sup> This treatment owes much to Bauer (2006: 1-88), who provides a thorough study of Platina's life and works, and to D'Elia (2009), who focuses more specifically on Platina's clash with Paul II.

<sup>4</sup> *Condottieri* were mercenary generals, many of whom were feudal lords in their own right.

<sup>5</sup> For a more thorough background on the Papal Curia and the positions taken by humanists, see D'Amico 1983: 19-37.

## *Life of Paul II*

were stripped of their jobs. Platina was furious. He tried to bring Paul to trial and, failing that, threatened to call a Church council.<sup>6</sup> The Council of Constance (1414-1418) had deposed three popes, ending the Western Schism, which some saw as a precedent for the superiority of councils over popes (a position called “conciliarism”). Paul responded by imprisoning Platina in Castel Sant’Angelo, though Platina was released four months later through the intercession of Cardinal Francesco Gonzaga, who had been his student in Mantua.

Platina’s second, and more serious, clash with Paul came four years later. This clash was bound up with his involvement in the Roman Academy. Platina was one of the leading members of the Roman Academy, which was an informal group of men who shared an interest in ancient Rome, its language, and its material remains. The Academy had been started by Pomponio Leto, who had come to Rome to study under Lorenzo Valla. Valla was the humanist who had used his philological skill to expose the Donation of Constantine as a forgery. Leto himself later became a professor at the University of Rome. Another major figure in the Roman Academy was Filippo Buonaccorsi, also known as Callimachus. Academy members met in Leto’s home to discuss ancient literature and philosophy, as well as their own literary compositions.

Not all observers would have seen the activities of this Academy as unobjectionable. Among the poems composed, several expressed homoerotic desire, and Pomponio Leto was later arrested for sodomy in Venice. Leto also encouraged members to take on ancient Roman names, which some critics argued was a rejection of Christianity on the grounds that it was a rejection of the names of saints.<sup>7</sup> Certain members of the Academy had been known to voice anti-clerical sentiments—especially Callimachus, and especially when he had been drinking.

Humanism itself, it should be stressed, was not anti-Christian in nature. Indeed, it was a thoroughly Christian phenomenon. Petrarch, who was among the earliest and most famous humanists, was a monk who took seriously his identity as a Christian. Moreover, the Papal Curia had employed many of the most prominent humanists, like Leonardo Bruni, Poggio Bracciolini, and Lorenzo Valla—all of whom served as apostolic secretaries. Humanism was a reawakening of interest in ancient Rome, especially its language and literature. A central preoccupation of humanism was the recovery of Classical Latin, which had been lost over the course of the Middle Ages. Indeed, the very idea that there is such a thing as “Classical Latin” is a notion that we owe to humanism.

---

6 Platina narrates these events in chapters 12-18 of his *Paul II*.

7 Leto’s birth name was Giulio Sanseverino, and he himself took the name Julius Pomponius Laetus, although he is commonly referred to by the Italianized version of that name: (Giulio) Pomponio Leto. Platina recounts the accusation that using ancient names was a rejection of Christianity in chapters 56 and 66 of *Paul II*.

## Bartolomeo Platina

A passion for Latin was not incompatible with Christianity, yet humanists also showed a pronounced enthusiasm for other aspects of Ancient Rome, some of which were contrary to the values of fifteenth-century Christianity. Aside from the different sexual *mores* and the traditional Roman religion(s), there was also the matter of philosophy. The rediscovery of Lucretius, who presented a compelling and alluring case for ignoring the gods, was especially problematic. In addition, there was the republicanism of ancient authors. The works of Livy, Sallust, and Cicero all celebrated Rome as a republic. These sentiments would have been unwelcome to the theocratic monarchy of the Papal Curia.

In 1468, Paul received word that the members of the Roman Academy had formed a conspiracy with his enemies and were plotting his violent overthrow. It was said that they had conspired with Luca Tozzoli, an exile living in Naples, who was at that very moment hiding outside the city with armed men. Callimachus fled, and Pomponio Leto was already on trial in Venice, though he was later extradited. Platina was immediately arrested, along with other members of the Roman Academy.

Rumors of a conspiracy were not to be dismissed lightly. Paul's uncle, Pope Eugene IV, had to flee Rome after an uprising in 1434 and was not able to return for almost ten years. The year 1452 saw another revolt against papal rule, this time with one rebel, Stefano Porcari, explicitly articulating his motivation as a desire to return to the republican values and government of Antiquity. In 1460, just four years before Paul's pontificate, a group of young Romans under a man named Tiburzio took control of the city while Pope Pius II was out of town.

Conspirators often relied on help from outside powers who would benefit from the pope's downfall. In the rebellion of 1434, Francesco Sforza of Milan briefly aided the rebels, as did the *condottieri* Niccolò Fortebraccio and Niccolò Piccinino. The young rebel Tiburzio was aided by Niccolò Piccinino's son Jacopo. Pope Paul had uneasy relationships with Naples, Venice, and France. In addition, Sultan Mehmet II had taken Constantinople in 1453, and there was a constant fear that he would go farther into Europe.

In the event, the accusation of conspiracy became less convincing when a crucial tenet proved unfounded: the exiled Luca Tozzoli had never left Naples, and he was certainly not lurking outside Rome with armed men. It may be the case that the conspiracy was real, as many scholars believe. After all, Platina certainly was not above colluding with outside powers against the pope—he had called for a council when Paul had dismissed him from his job. On the other hand, it may also be the case that the humanists' treason had not extended beyond some complaints over drinks.<sup>8</sup> Paul, in any case, ultimately dropped the accusation of

---

<sup>8</sup> For the narration of Platina's arrest and his defense against the charge of conspiracy, see chapters 45-54.

treason. He did not, however, release the humanists; instead, he charged them with heresy.

Platina claims that Paul charged Academy members with heresy only to keep himself from looking foolish.<sup>9</sup> The reports of conspiracy had stirred a panic in the city, and the Academy members had been tortured as part of the investigation. Paul risked looking both cruel and easily frightened. Despite Platina's protestations, the humanists did have some unconventional beliefs. In Platina's telling, Paul charged them with being followers of Plato, whom (Platina points out) many Christian thinkers had found acceptable. One suspects that the charge might rather have been following Epicurus. Ultimately, Paul relented on the charge of heresy as well.

### **3. *The Lives of the Popes***

After Paul's death in 1471, Platina enjoyed more favor with his successor, Sixtus IV. It was to Sixtus that Platina dedicated his *Lives of the Popes*, which he wrote in the years from 1472 to 1474. The authority that Jesus bestowed on the apostle Peter (Matthew 16:18-19) was the ideological cornerstone for the papacy, since the popes saw themselves as Peter's successors. Platina takes an even more expansive view of papal succession, beginning his *Lives of the Popes* not with Peter but with Jesus himself.

The *Lives* took their inspiration most obviously from Suetonius's *Lives of the Caesars*, and the choice of genre was not a coincidence. When Leonardo Bruni, the humanist from the republic of Florence, had written the *History of the Florentine People*, he followed the model of Livy, who had recounted the history and growth of the Roman republic. Platina, instead, followed Suetonius's succession of imperial leaders, even going so far as to refer to Jesus as "the emperor of the Christians" (*Vita Christi* 13).

Platina's *Lives* was not the first collection of papal biographies. The *Liber Pontificalis*, which was written intermittently over hundreds of years, contained brief sketches of the popes up to Martin V (r. 1417-1431). Platina's preface to his *Lives* suggests that the decision to take on the project was partly due to the unpleasant (to a humanist's eyes) Medieval Latin in which the *Liber Pontificalis* was written. But Platina did not merely revise the language of the *Liber Pontificalis*, he wrote an entirely new work, different in scope and drawing on a range of ancient and contemporary sources.

In the first print edition, from 1479, the last *Life* treated was that of Paul II, to which we now turn.

---

9 Platina narrates the accusations of heresy and defends himself in chapters 55-67.

#### 4. Structure and content of *Paul II*

Platina's *Paul II* is a remarkable piece of literature. It is a biography in which the main conflict in the story takes place between the protagonist and the author himself. (And Platina is nothing if not antagonistic.) Sometimes Platina's hostility comes out in his unflattering portrayal of Paul, whom he portrays as manipulative (ch. 6-9), greedy (80), vain (71-72), and above all ignorant (2, 61-62, 65, 86). At other times, Platina becomes an actual character in the story (*Platyna*), who confronts the pope at crucial points. In one instance the two merge, and it is unclear whether the long defense against the charge of heresy (ch. 60-61) is supposed to represent the words of *Platyna* the character to Pope Paul, or the words of Platina the author to his readers.

The *Paul II* can be divided into five main sections. The first (ch. 1-11) deals with the early career of Paul II (then Pietro Barbo), and in particular his rivalry with Alovisius Patavinus. The second section (ch. 12-18) narrates Paul's dismissal of the abbreviators and Platina's response. The third section (ch. 19-41) treats a variety of events in Paul's pontificate, from navigating external wars to mediating internal feuds. Section four (ch. 42-70) recounts Paul's reaction to the alleged conspiracy. Finally (ch. 71-88), Platina sums up by commenting on Paul's appearance and habits.

Since we assume that most readers will not already be intimately familiar with the story, we provide a detailed breakdown of the chapters:

#### Outline of Platina's *Paul II*

##### I. Early Career of Pietro Barbo (Paul II)

1. Born in Venice, Pietro Barbo planned to become a merchant, until his uncle was elected pope
2. Pietro Barbo abandons his plan to be a merchant in order to prepare for an ecclesiastical career
3. Pietro quickly rises in the Church hierarchy with the help of his brother, Paolo, and of his uncle, Pope Eugene IV
4. Pietro becomes a cardinal and a rival of Alovisius Patavinus
5. Pietro and Alovisius have a bitter feud
6. When Eugene IV dies, Pietro Barbo uses charm and manipulation to insinuate himself into the good graces of the new pope, Nicholas V

## *Life of Paul II*

7. Pietro uses the same tactics on the next pope, Callistus III, and convinces him to send Aloysius away to fight the Turks
8. Pietro helps his friends and takes special care of the sick, but perhaps with ulterior motives
9. Pietro's charm makes him popular in Rome and in the Papal Curia
10. Pietro also has success outside of Rome, although it makes him an enemy of Count Everso
11. When Callistus III dies, Pietro finds his ambitions thwarted by the new pope, Pius II

### **II. Paul's First Clash with Platina and the Humanists**

12. When Pius II dies, Pietro gets elected pope, becoming Paul II; he quickly disbands the College of Abbreviators
13. Platina and the Abbreviators try to take Paul to trial, provoking his anger
14. The Abbreviators try to change Paul's mind, but can no longer gain an audience
15. Platina, infuriated, writes a letter decrying the injustice of the dismissal and calling for a Church Council to overrule Paul's decision
16. Paul jails Platina for treason, on charges of libel and summoning a council; Platina counters that libel is anonymous, whereas Palatina signed his name on the letter
17. Platina counters the second accusation by pointing out the authority of the ancient Ecumenical Councils
18. Platina's pleas are unsuccessful, but he is ultimately freed through the help of his patron, Cardinal Francesco Gonzaga

### **III. The Pontificate of Paul II: Domestic and Foreign Affairs**

19. Paul involves himself with the canons of the Lateran, provoking some ill will
20. Paul calls for a crusade against the Turks, but the various Christian powers are fighting amongst themselves
21. Paul is troubled by heresy in Bohemia, but is hindered from acting because of the Turkish situation and a succession crisis in Hungary

Bartolomeo Platina

22. Paul mediates a feud between the Caffarelli and Albertini in Rome
23. Alovius Patavinus dies, leaving his estate to two nephews
24. Paul voids the will of Alovius Patavinus, redistributing his estate more fairly
25. Paul generously hosts Frederick, son of King Ferdinand of Naples, and gives him a golden rose
26. Paul calls on Ferdinand, King of Naples, to help him fight the sons of Count Everso
27. The sons of Count Everso had long been defying the pope's authority
28. The sons of Count Everso are defeated; one escapes but the other is captured
29. A dispute over tribute arises between Paul and King Ferdinand of Naples
30. King Ferdinand invites Jacopo Piccinino to Naples, where he is jailed and murdered
31. Some believed the pope privy to the murder, but the idea is rejected since the pope had much to gain from Piccinino
32. Paul and Ferdinand settle their differences
33. Francesco Sforza dies; he was Duke of Milan, and had taken possession of Genoa
34. Paul resolves to maintain order in Italy and moves to assure a smooth succession in Milan
35. Galeazzo Sforza, son of Francesco, returns from France and takes control of Milan, with his mother's help
36. Paul considers aiding the Knights of Rhodes
37. Paul punishes several local heretics
38. Paul creates several new cardinals
39. The Battle of Molinella: Florentine exiles try to return with the help of Venice and the commander Bartolomeo Colleoni; Florence fights back with the help of Naples and the commander Galeazzo Sforza

40. Amid complex military and political maneuvering, Paul brokers a peace
41. Galeazzo Sforza does not want the Duke of Savoy to be included in the peace; the King of France ultimately settles things

#### **IV. Paul versus Platina and the Humanists: A Possible Plot Leads to Charges of Conspiracy and Heresy**

42. Paul and his vice-chamberlain, Vianesio Albergati, put on a lavish Carnival celebration in Rome
43. Paul is warned of a conspiracy between Callimachus (of the Roman Academy) and Luca Tozzoli (an exile in Naples); panic sets in
44. In the ensuing panic, many are arrested and jailed; some individuals opportunistically take advantage of the situation
45. Platina is arrested and brought before Paul
46. Platina denies that Callimachus was contriving a conspiracy
47. Paul calls for Platina to be tortured and imprisons him in Castel Sant'Angelo
48. Paul learns that Luca Tozzoli never left Naples
49. Vianesio tortures many humanists
50. Vianesio tortures Platina
51. Vianesio questions Platina about Callimachus's alleged conspiracy, about why Pomponio Leto called him 'Holiest Father,' and about whether he had written to any princes to call a council
52. Platina denies all charges: he did not like Callimachus, he cannot speak for Pomponio Leto, and he sent no letters
53. Platina is asked about his dealings with Sigismondo Malatesta; the questioning ends, but Platina is promised more torment
54. Back in his cell, Platina is cared for by Angelo and Marcello del Bufalo, who had been jailed for a murder relating to a feud
55. Paul's doctor tells Platina that he will be freed soon; instead, Paul charges him with heresy

## Bartolomeo Platina

56. Pomponio Leto is extradited from Venice and faces questions about his use of ancient (pre-Christian) names
57. Lucillus is also charged, based on his authorship of a letter with homoerotic content
58. Vianesio again tortures the humanists
59. Paul lavishly hosts the Holy Roman Emperor; Platina watches from his cell
60. After the Emperor departs, Paul accuses Platina and the humanists of debating the immortality of the soul and of being Platonists
61. Platina defends himself on various grounds
62. Paul accuses Platina of an excessive love of pagan Antiquity, which Platina says is hypocritical, since Paul loved ancient artworks
63. Two bishops and two monks come to try Platina; Leonardo of Perugia speaks against him and Francesco of Assisi for him
64. Paul then excludes Francesco in an attempt to influence the proceedings
65. The Roman Academy is mentioned and receives criticism
66. Paul attempts to mock Pomponio Leto about his name; Pomponio responds with a joke that Paul fails to get
67. Paul accuses Platina of many things, including ingratitude, which Platina reflects on sarcastically
68. After a year of imprisonment, Platina is granted freedom of movement in Paul's house, then the grounds of the Vatican, then all of Rome
69. Paul eventually allows Platina to leave Rome and go to the Baths to heal his arm, wounded from the torture; Platina returns afterwards, regaining Paul's trust
70. Two years later, Paul dies

## V. A Reflection on Paul's Life

71. Paul was a large man, and took special care of his appearance
72. Paul favored extravagant dress and liked to be seen

*Life of Paul II*

73. Paul also favored extravagant dress for the cardinals; some believed this splendor did not serve Christianity
74. Paul had even promised summer palaces for all the cardinals, although he did not actually provide them
75. Paul attempted to increase papal glory through influence and arms. The first example of the former is his mediation of a dispute between the Duke of Burgundy and the People of Liège
76. The second example of an attempt to increase papal power through influence: Paul deposed the Hussite King of Bohemia; he unsuccessfully tried to replace him with Mathias Corvinus
77. First example of an attempt to increase papal power through arms: Paul unsuccessfully besieged Tolfa before buying its loyalty
78. Second example of an attempt to increase papal power through arms: Paul besieged Rimini but failed to take it due to his stinginess in paying soldiers and his indecisiveness
79. Paul had a hesitant nature, which he himself valued but which ultimately proved harmful
80. Paul was aggressive in collecting money, and his actions sometimes verged on simony
81. Paul used his money liberally, caring for those in need and assuring necessary supplies for Rome
82. Paul also used his money for building projects and popular entertainments
83. Paul was nocturnal and difficult to deal with
84. Paul had peculiar tastes in food, which might have contributed to his death
85. Paul was considered to be just and merciful
86. Paul discouraged humanistic education, favoring only practical literacy
87. Paul could be unkind to those asking favors, but he ultimately delivered more than he had promised
88. Paul kept his underlings in check, which was appreciated by the Romans and the court

## 5. Editorial principles I: The constitution of the text

We will be following the text of the *editio princeps* (that is, the first print edition), which was published in Venice in 1479. This approach might seem strange to an audience of classicists, and so we provide a few words of explanation.

Classical texts are usually published as critical editions that draw from multiple manuscripts. Since no autographs survive, editors make a composite text from bits and pieces of various manuscripts in an attempt to reconstruct what the author might have written. For texts from the Renaissance, however, we often have an autograph (sometimes more than one), or an *editio princeps* supervised by the author. It is possible to create a single composite text, but there is some question as to the purpose and benefits of doing so. Approaches to textual criticism are hotly debated in the Neo-Latin world, but one method would be to choose a single text and note how the others differ. Such an approach recognizes each iteration as its own coherent whole.

Platina's *Lives of the Popes* is especially unsuited to a composite critical edition. There are three manuscripts that bear corrections in Platina's hand, as well as an *editio princeps* that he himself oversaw; these four sources are not different witnesses to any single, original text, but instead show different versions that Platina composed over the course of his lifetime. In the following paragraphs, we outline the manuscript and print history of the *Lives of the Popes*, as well as the decisions that we made in establishing the text of the present edition.

Ludwig Pastor, the famous scholar of the papacy, discovered one of the manuscripts with Platina's autograph corrections in 1888. This manuscript, which is housed at the Vatican Library (Vat. Lat. 2044, referred to as V), was the dedication copy that Platina gave to Pope Sixtus IV. Pastor reports (1890) that Platina's changes to the text were concentrated in the *Life of Paul II*. Pastor observed that in these changes Platina generally walked back or lightened his criticisms of Paul, although Platina did occasionally sharpen criticisms of other figures.

Another manuscript bearing Platina's autograph corrections can be found in Rome's Angelica Library (ms. 222, referred to as A). These corrections are nearly the same as those found in V. When Giacinto Gaida made his critical edition of the *Lives of the Popes* for the *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores* series, he made use of three sources: V, A, and the *editio princeps* (referred to as E).<sup>10</sup>

Not long ago, there was a spectacular discovery in the Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale of Florence: the manuscript on which E was based (Conv. soppr.

---

10 Gaida (pp. lxxxv-c) describes V, A, and E, as well as later print editions and translations.

C.4.797, referred to as F).<sup>11</sup> F also bears autograph corrections by Platina, and its main text evidently has an earlier version of the Life than the others, since it contains a number of comments (marked for deletion) missing from the other manuscripts and left out of the *editio princeps*. Like the other marginal corrections, these changes involved a number of hostile comments that Platina had apparently decided went a step too far.

These manuscripts, and their corrections, were not all made at the same time. It is clear that the main text of F was written first, that some marginal corrections and revisions were made to F before the main texts of V and A were copied, that further marginal corrections and revisions were then made to all three manuscripts, and that F was then used to make the *editio princeps* (E).

This reader is not the place to offer a critical edition, but a new one would be welcome. Obviously, it would be good to have a text that accounts for the readings of the Florence manuscript. Beyond that, there are some serious problems with Gaida's critical edition. His edition is excellent in many respects, but there is a fundamental flaw in that his method of choosing between variants was simply to take the reading of any two of his sources over the third.<sup>12</sup> (Again, these sources are V, A, and E.) This method obscures the stages of change, which are distinct and important. A second problem is the presence of errors in the apparatus criticus. Any work of scholarship will have errors, but Gaida's apparatus criticus has enough to warrant a new look at the manuscripts.<sup>13</sup>

We had no plans to make a new critical edition, but we thought that rather than printing Gaida's mixed version of the text, we would follow one single exemplar as a coherent whole. The manuscripts show a clear editorial progression, of which the *editio princeps* is the final product. The *editio princeps*, while conveniently digitized, also had the virtue of being the version of the text that Platina decided to have widely distributed. The added and deleted comments in the manuscripts were too interesting to pass up, so we occasionally included these in our commentary, although we did not aim to be comprehensive.

---

11 The manuscript was discovered by Piero Scapecchi (1999).

12 Gaida explains his method at pp. xcvi-c of his edition.

13 We note many of these errors below in our corrections to the *editio princeps* text, notes 15-20. In addition to those noted below, the following are a few more examples: in ch. 5, Gaida (p. 366) gives *iuratur* as the reading of A, when the manuscript actually reads *inuratur*; in ch. 9, Gaida (p. 367) gives *non sine urbanitate* as the reading of both V and A, although A in fact reads *cum urbanitate*; in ch. 64, Gaida (p. 389) gives *surdafer* as the reading of A, when it appears to be *surdaster* just like V. In ch. 63, Gaida (p. 388) notes that the sentence about Leonardo of Perugia is marked for expunction in V, and that the expunction is missing in A and E. In fact, the sentence exists and has no marks for expunction in A, but is entirely left out of E. Finally, in ch. 79, Gaida gives *perposterus* as the reading of E, though it is actually *praeposterus*.

The *editio princeps* lacks chapter divisions, which we have added. The *editio princeps* also lacks printed page numbers, although hand-written folio numbers can be faintly seen on the copy digitized by Google. For folio numbers, the side of a page that a reader first encounters is numbered and referred to as the “recto”; after turning that page, the number is not usually re-written, but the page is referred as the “verso” of that number. So (e.g.) the first page of Platina’s *Paul II* is on the recto of folio 231 (that is, on 231r), and the second page is then 231v. We have added the folio numbers in {curly brackets} for those who would like to make use of the digitized *editio princeps*. We have added Gaida’s page numbers in [square brackets], in order to make it easier to make use of his historical notes.

We corrected several mistakes in the text of the *editio princeps*. Most of these were simple printing errors caused by a letter being left out or confused for a similar letter, and they produce a reading that is obviously wrong.<sup>14</sup> There are also some words that, while not obvious printer’s errors, do seem to be mistakes rather than revisions. In twelve of these cases we followed the reading of the manuscripts. These include: *immiti* for an *editio princeps* reading of *inimici* (ch. 14), *ullo suo dispendio* for *ullo dispendio* (ch. 19), *vir quidem ditissimus* for *vir ditissimus quidem* (ch. 23), *fore* for *foret* (ch. 31), *diceret eum* for *diceret* (ch. 41), *tantum tumultus* for *tantum tumultum* (ch. 60), *inusta* for *iunsta* (ch. 65),<sup>15</sup> *negocium* for *negocii* (ch. 78), *procurante* for *procurantem* (ch. 78), *fatigatus* for *fugatus* (ch. 79), *id sibi* for *ut sibi* (ch. 79), and *nepote* for *nepotes* (ch. 82).

In five places we took corrections from the important early editions of Eu-  
charius Cervicorn (1540) and Onofrio Panvinio (1562): *mentis opinione* for a  
reading of *mente opinionis* in the *editio princeps* and the manuscripts (ch. 37),<sup>16</sup>  
*incitarent* for a reading of *incitaret* (ch. 56),<sup>17</sup> *confesso* for *confosso* (ch. 58),<sup>18</sup>

---

14 E.g. *ia* for *iam* (ch. 2) and *tevocas* for *revocas* (ch. 13); the most common such error is the result of putting in letters <u> and <n> upside-down, yielding such readings as *prodennte* for *prodeunte* (ch. 25) and *iucohata* for *incohata* (ch. 77). There are a dozen total of these printer’s errors, which did not seem worth listing, with the exception of *iunsta* for *inusta* (see n. 15.)

15 The reading *iunsta* in E must be a typographical error for *inusta*, which is the reading of F and V. This difficult reading gave rise to several mistaken corrections. Manuscript A gives this word as *iniusta*, and the editions of Cervicorn (p. 305) and Panvino (f. 256r) read *iusta*. Gaida (p. 389) mistakenly reports *iusta* as the reading of A and V, and *iniuncta* as the reading of E.

16 The reading *mentis opinione* is found in Cervicorn (p. 301) and Panvinio (f. 253r). In this case, Gaida (p. 378) mistakenly ascribed the reading *mentis opinione* to V.

17 The reading *incitarent* is found in Cervicorn (p. 304) and Panvinio (f. 255r).

18 The reading *confesso* is found in Cervicorn (p. 304) and Panvinio (f. 255v).

*Macedonianos* for *Macedonios* (ch. 61),<sup>19</sup> and *contemnebatque* for *contemnebat* (ch. 66).<sup>20</sup> We also corrected *nisi* to *non nisi* (ch. 79) on the basis of sense.

## 6. Editorial principles II: Orthography<sup>21</sup>

We have largely preserved spelling conventions of the *editio princeps* rather than standardizing everything to Classical Latin.<sup>22</sup> Unusual spellings can be an obstacle for the intermediate reader, but the on-page running glossary should keep any confusion to a minimum. Moreover, these spelling conventions allow access to a defining feature of Renaissance Latin: the attempt (not always successful) to recover the Latinity of ancient Rome. Some non-Classical spellings are the result of changes that had happened over the course of the Middle Ages. Others are the result of hyper-correction as humanist scholars tried to restore Classical orthography. In this section, we briefly outline a few of the most commonly encountered differences between the spelling of words found in this edition and the spelling of Latin as most students will have learned it.

### A. Variability between –ti and –ci

The hard <t> in Classical Latin was palatalized in any sequence of <ti> followed by another vowel, i.e. *negotium*, resulting in a “ts” sound similar to the “zz” in “pizza” (so *negotium* was pronounced as neg-oats-ee-um). The <c> of Classical Latin had also been palatalized before <i> and <e>, with the result that <ti> and <ci> could be interchangeable, and so Platina often writes things like *negocium* (CL *negotium*) and *precium* (CL *pretium*).

---

19 The reading *Macedonianos* is found in Panvinio (f. 256r), while Cervicorn (p. 304) reads *macedonios*, as do V, A, and E. Gaida (p. 388) mistakenly attributes the reading *Macedonianos* to V.

20 The reading *contemnebatque* is found in Cervicorn (p. 305) and Panvinio (f. 256r). Gaida (p. 389) mistakenly suggests that only A had a reading of *contemnebat*, which was in fact shared by V and E. As we now know from F, Palatina had originally added more to the sentence.

21 On the orthography of Renaissance Latin more generally, see “Orthography of Neo-Latin” (Minkova) in *Brill’s Encyclopaedia of the Neo-Latin World*.

22 We did alter Platina’s punctuation and capitalization, since these seemed likely to present a major obstacle to intermediate readers. Platina is not entirely consistent in his approach to spelling, but we did not attempt to standardize it. We did expand most abbreviations and ligatures.

## B. Diphthongs

In post-Classical Latin, the diphthongs *<ae>* (“y” in “sky”) and *<oe>* (“oy” in “boy”) changed in their pronunciation to the point where they became indistinguishable from the long vowel *<e>* (“ay” in “bay”). Humanist scholars like Platina, as part of the process of rediscovering Classical Latin, attempted to undo these changes and determine the original Latin pronunciation. Sometimes, they missed places that should have diphthongs, like when Platina wrote *Ecclesie* instead of *Ecclesiae* as the dative singular (ch. 26). Other times, they made hypercorrections, substituting an *<ae>* or *<oe>* for an *<e>*. Renaissance authors, for instance, tended to write the word *ceterus* (“the other”) as *caeterus* because they believed it came from the Greek *kai ἔτερος* (*kai heteros*). We have chosen to preserve these false diphthongs, but we express them with the symbol *<e>*, known as *e caudata*, “e with a tail” (so, *ceterus*). It should be noted though, that the *editio princeps* used the *e caudata* to indicate all instances, both proper and erroneous, of the diphthong *<ae>*.

## C. Confusion between double and single consonants

Classical Latin distinguished between a single consonant and doubled consonants, i.e. the “k” sound in *ecce* was longer than the similar sound in *locum*. In post-Classical Latin, changes in pronunciation led to some spelling confusion among the humanists, and so we see in the *editio princeps* the word *legitima* as *legittima*, and the name *Callistus* as *Calistus*.

## D. Confusion between *<u>* and *<o>*, *<i>* and *<e>*

In unstressed syllables, *<o>* and *<e>* ceased to be distinguished from *<u>* and *<i>*, respectively—a process that was already beginning in the Classical period. In the *editio princeps*, we find such words as *adolescens* (CL *adulescens*) and *scrineum* (CL *scrinium*).

## E. Confusion between *<i>* and *<y>*

The letter *<y>* originally entered the Roman alphabet to transcribe words that used the Greek upsilon *<v>*, which was pronounced like the German *<ü>*. The sound soon merged with the sound of the letter *<i>*, and the two are largely interchangeable in Medieval Latin. Renaissance scholars were still working out the proper usage of *<y>*, and in the *editio princeps* one occasionally sees spellings like *hyems* (CL *hiems*).

## F. Assimilation of nasals to the following consonant

Throughout all periods of Latin, nasal sounds sometimes assimilated to their following consonant, so *in + pensa* might be written *impensa*, with the nasal sound assimilating to the following labial consonant. It was also possible for a labial nasal to assimilate to a following dental consonant,

so *eum + -dem* is usually written *eundem*. In the orthography of the *editio princeps*, this process applies more widely, and includes both dental and palatal consonants, so one finds *aliquandiu* (CL *aliquamdiu*) and *quamquam* (CL *quamquam*).

We have not attempted to reproduce the abbreviations from the *editio princeps*, which would likely prove a substantial obstacle to the intermediate reader. Yet since these abbreviations would have been a major element of the contemporary reading experience, we do provide a small sample from the *editio princeps* (figure 1) along with brief explanations. Abbreviations originally arose in manuscripts, which had to be laboriously copied by hand and took countless hours of painstaking work. Generally, these abbreviations were employed to save time and space by shortening words in an understandable way. Even after the invention of the printing press, abbreviations were still used to save on space. The first few sentences of Platina's *Life of Paul II*, shown here in figure 1, exhibit many of these abbreviations.

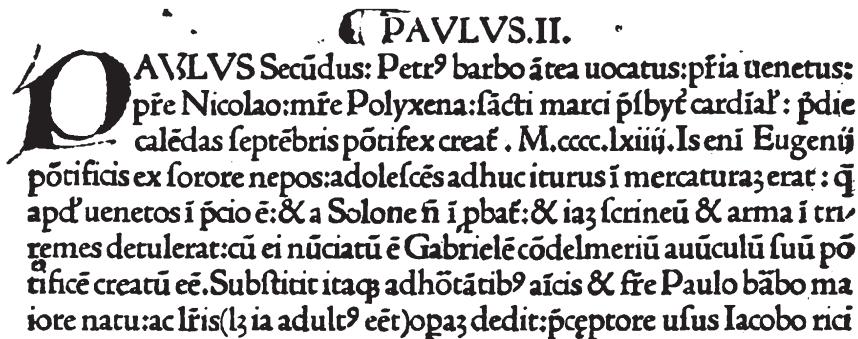


FIGURE 1: The first lines of the *Life of Paul II*  
in the 1479 *Editio Princeps* (digitized by Google)

- ú A bar over a vowel replaces a following (or sometimes preceding) <en> or <em>, seen here for example in *Secu(n)dus* in the first line and *a(m)icis* in the seventh
- ⁹ A raised <⁹> symbol at the end of a word replaces an <-us> ending, cf. *Petr(us)* in the first line
- Ṅ A barbell shape over a vowel replaces a following <r>, cf. *adho(r)ta(n)tib(us)* and *ba(r)bo* in line seven
- Ṅ A bar over a mid-word consonant can replace any number of letters in common words, cf. *p(at)ria* in the first line or *l(ac)r(im)is* in the eighth
- ᜄ A curl added to the top of the letter <t> represents an <-ur> or <-er> ending, cf. *p(re)sbyt(er)* in the second line and *creat(ur)* in the third

- ꝑ A curl added near the top of the letter <l> replaces an <-is> ending, cf. *cardi(n)al(is)* in the second line
- ꝓ A <ʒ> symbol appearing at the end of a word usually replaces a final <-m>, cf. *ia(m)* in the fifth line
- ꝑ A small <ʒ> symbol after the letter <q> replaces the letters <-ue>, cf. *itaq(ue)* in the seventh line
- ꝑ A <q> with a bar on top stands for *q(uod)*, cf. line four
- ꝑ The <&>, which was originally a ligature of *et*, is used frequently, cf. line five
- ꝑ An <e> with a bar above it (<ē>) stands for *est*, cf. line five
- ꝑ An double <e> with a bar over the second (<eē>) stands for *esse*, cf. line seven
- ꝑ An <n> with a bar above it stands for *non*, cf. line five
- ꝑ A <p> with a tail proceeding down and backwards from the loop stands in for *pro*, cf. *i(m)p(ro)bat(ur)* in line five
- ꝑ A <p> with a bar across the descender stands in for *per*, cf. *op(er)a(m)* in line eight
- ꝑ A <p> with a bar above it stands in for *pre* or *prae*, cf. *p(re)sbyt(er)* in the second line and *p(rae)ceptore* in the eighth

## 7. Grammatical and Stylistic Notes on Platina and Renaissance Latin<sup>23</sup>

Perhaps the defining feature of humanism was the quest to restore Latin as it existed in the age of Cicero.<sup>24</sup> A humanist like Platina, then, would be dismayed to see his own Latin treated as a discrete phenomenon with rules different from Classical Latin. The gradual progress and ultimate triumph of humanism can be seen in the Latin of the humanists themselves, which came closer and closer to the Classical standard with every generation. Petrarch wrote in a Latin that was largely still medieval, although it had some classicizing features. A hundred years after his death, Platina wrote in a Latin that very closely approximates

---

23 On the differences between Medieval Latin and Renaissance Latin, see “From Medieval Latin to Neo-Latin” (Pade) in *Brill’s Encyclopaedia of the Neo-Latin World*.

24 On this quest see “Neo-Latin: Character and Development” (Ramminger) in *Brill’s Encyclopaedia of the Neo-Latin World*.

what one would find in Cicero. Yet there are differences, and we sketch out a few of the most pronounced ones here:

#### A. Ablative of Extent of Time

Because the ablative can denote time within which, it sometimes overlaps with the concept of duration. When the fired abbreviators sat vigil persistently outside of Paul's door, Platina describes the situation with these words (ch. 14): *Hac autem diligentia viginti continuis noctibus usi sumus*, “We employed this diligence for **twenty straight nights.**” Even Classical writers such as Cicero and Livy had occasionally used this construction, but it is encountered very commonly in Platina’s *Paul II*.

#### B. *Ad* + Accusative Replacing the Dative

One feature of later Latin is that many uses of the cases (especially the genitive and dative) came to be expressed with prepositions. The humanists did much to restore the case usage of Classical Latin, but Platina still frequently uses *ad* + acc. instead of the dative. Platina depicts Pomponio Leto (ch. 56), for instance, as replying to his interrogators with a sharp *Quid ad vos?* (“What’s it **to you?**”) where we would normally expect a dative of reference: *Quid vobis?*

#### C. *Dum* + Imperfect Subjunctive for “While/When”

When *dum* takes the subjunctive, it normally means “until” or “provided that.” The word *dum* means “while” when it begins a clause with a verb in the indicative (usually in the present). However, *dum* and *cum* came to blend together in a number of usages. In particular, the circumstantial use of *cum* + imperf. subjunctive (“while/when”) influenced the use of *dum*, so that one also encounters *dum* + imperf. subjunctive to mean “while/when.” Platina describes his torture in Castel Sant’Angelo as follows (ch. 51): ***dum penderem miser ... rogabat*** (“**While I was hanging** miserably ... he was asking”). This usage begins in the Classical period, but increases dramatically in the Middle Ages.

#### D. Pluperfect Passive as Perfect Passive Participle + Pluperfect of *sum*

In Classical Latin, the pluperfect passive was normally formed by combining the perfect passive participle with a form of *sum* in the imperfect, e.g. *Laudatus eram* (“I had been praised”). Already in the Classical period, authors sometimes formed the pluperfect passive as if it were a combination of the passive participle (*laudatus*) and the pluperfect (*fueram*): *Laudatus fueram* (“I had been praised”). Platina regularly uses this construction.

#### E. *Homo, Hominis* as a Third Person Pronoun

Platina very often uses a form of *homo, hominis* where one would expect *is, eius*. So, for example, when Pope Paul first hears that there is a plot against him, Platina describes his vice-chamberlain's action as follows (ch. 44): *Augebat hominis timorem Vianesius* (“Vianesio was stoking **his** fear”). It would not be unreasonable to translate this as “Vianesio was stoking the man's fear,” but the sense is more generally that of a third person pronoun than a reference to a “person” or “man.”

#### F. Classical Words with Non-Classical Meanings

There are a number of words that had gained new meanings after the Classical era. The word *dux*, for instance, could mean “duke” as well as “leader.” In these cases, our glossary includes both the Classical and the post-Classical meanings, e.g. “**dux, ducis** *m.*: leader; duke.”

### 8. A note on the running glossary and commentary

The running glossary provides translations for all the words in the text, excepting the ones students are most likely to know already, like *mater* and *video* (these can be found in the Common Vocabulary List in the back). We do continue to gloss words that occur frequently in the text, so one still finds (e.g.) **pontifex, -ficus** in the final chapters. Our assumption is that not all students will be reading the work from cover to cover. Given the limited space for Renaissance Latin in the typical curriculum, one might well only be able to read a few chapters.

We gloss words as they appear in the text; in cases where the form is post-Classical, we provide the Classical orthography in parentheses: “**negocium, -i** (CL *negotium*).”<sup>25</sup> We gloss all words (no matter how common) when they differ in meaning or orthography from Classical Latin.

The commentary provides grammatical and historical assistance. Given that many classicists will have a limited familiarity with fifteenth-century Italian politics, there are more historical notes than one might expect in an intermediate reader. In making these notes we have had constant recourse to D'Elia 2009, Bauer 2006, D'Amico 1983, Pastor 1902, and the notes in Gaida's critical edition. The grammatical help in our commentary will usually consist of parsing a potentially confusing form (e.g. *manus* as gen. sing.) or identifying a syntactic usage (e.g. “rel. clause of characteristic”). We generally do not gloss phrases, except those that are especially difficult, on the grounds that excessive glossing (much like working with a translation) can be counter-productive.

---

<sup>25</sup> It should be noted that Platina is not consistent in his spelling choices, using, e.g., sometimes *negocium* and others *negotium*.





## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### Manuscripts and print editions

- F = Conventi Soppressi C.4.797 in the Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Firenze (Florence)
- V = Vaticanus Latinus 2044 in the Bibliotheca Apostolica Vaticana (Rome)
- A = codex 222 in the Bibliotheca Angelica (Rome)
- E = *editio princeps.* 1479. *Excellentissimi historici Platinae in vitas summorum pontificum ad Sextum IIII. pontificem maximum paeclarum opus.* Venice: Johannes de Colonia Agripinensi and Johannes Manthen.
- Cervicorn = 1540. *Bap. Platinae Cremonensis, De vitis ac gestis summorum pontificum, ad sua usque tempora, Liber Vnus.* *Huic additæ sunt Vitæ ac res gestae eorum qui interim fuere pontificum, a Paulo uidelicet II. ad Paulum huius nominis III.* Cologne: Eucharius Cervicorn and Gottfried Hittorp.
- Panvinio = 1562. *B. Platinae Historia, De Vitis Pontificum Romanorum, à D. N. Iesu Christo usque ad Paulum Papam II.* *Longè quam antea emendatior; cvi Onuphrii Panvinii Veronensis Fratris Eremitæ Augustiniani opera, reliquorum quoque pontificum uitæ usque ad Pium IIII. pontificem maximum adiunctæ sunt.* Venice: Michael Tramezinus.
- Gaida = Gaida, Giacinto, ed. 1913-1923. *Liber de vita Christi ac omnium pontificum.* Rerum Italicarum Scriptores 3.1. Città di Castello: Lapi, and Bologna: Zanichelli.

I Tatti Latin/English edition (so far only the first volume of three has been published):

D'Elia, Anthony F. 2008. *Bartolomeo Platina. Lives of the Popes. Volume I: Antiquity.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Bartolomeo Platina

Articles announcing the discovery of new codices:

Pastor, Ludwig. 1890. "Die Originalhandschrift von Platina's Geschichte der Päpste." *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissen*.

Scapecchi, Piero. 1999. "Un nuovo codice del Liber de vita Christi ac omnium pontificum di Bartolomeo Platina usato come esemplare di tipo per le edizioni veneziane del 1479 e del 1504." *Roma nel Rinascimento* 247-52.

English translation:

Rycaut, Paul, trans. 1685. *The Lives of the Popes, from the time of our Saviour Jesus Christ, to the Reign of Sixtus IV*. London: Christopher Wilkinson.

Two contemporary (Latin) biographies Paul II:

Zippel, Giuseppe, ed. 1904. *Le vite di Paolo II di Gaspare da Verona e Michele Canensi*. Rerum Italicarum Scriptores 3.16. Città di Castello: Lapi.

Andrews, Avery. 1970. "The 'Lost' Fifth Book of the Life of Pope Paul II by Gaspar of Verona." *Studies in the Renaissance* 17: 7-45.

Historical background on Platina, Paul II, and Rome in the Renaissance:

Bauer, Stefan. 2006. *The Censorship and Fortuna of Platina's Lives of the Popes in the Sixteenth Century*. Turnhout: Brepols.

D'Amico, John. 1983. *Renaissance Humanism in Papal Rome: Humanists and Churchmen on the Eve of the Reformation*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.

D'Elia, Anthony. 2009. *A Sudden Terror: The Plot to Murder the Pope in Renaissance Rome*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Pastor, Ludwig. 1902. *A History of the Popes. Volume IV: Paul II and Sixtus IV*. Trans. Frederick Antrobus. St. Louis: Herder.

Stinger, Charles. 1985. *The Renaissance in Rome*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Walsh, Michael. 2015. *A Dictionary of Popes, 3rd Edition*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Latin in the Renaissance:

New handbooks on Neo-Latin:

Ford, Philip, Jan Bloemendal and Charles Fantazzi, eds. 2014. *Brill's Encyclopaedia of the Neo-Latin World*. 2 vols. Leiden: Brill.

Knight, Sarah and Stefan Tilg, eds. 2015. *The Oxford Handbook of Neo-Latin*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Korenjak, Martin. 2016. *Geschichte der neulateinischen Literatur: Vom Humanismus bis zur Gegenwart*. Munich: C. H. Beck.

Moul, Victoria, ed. 2017. *A Guide to Neo-Latin Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Dictionaries: given the attempts of humanists to write in a Classical idiom, the *Oxford Latin Dictionary* and *Lewis and Short* work well for most words.

For words that have changed more substantially, one of the best dictionaries is free online (though in German): Johann Ramminger's *Neulateinische Wortliste*: [www.neulatein.de](http://www.neulatein.de)

Another good dictionary is:

Hoven, René. 2006. *Dictionary of Renaissance Latin from Prose Sources*. Leiden: Brill.



FIGURE 2: Map of Italy, c. 1450 (credit: E. Hayes)

## TIMELINE OF EVENTS

- 1417** Pietro Barbo, the future Pope Paul II, is born in Venice
- 1421** Bartolomeo Platina is born as Bartolomeo Sacchi of Piadena
- 1431** Pietro Barbo's uncle, Gabriele Condulmaro, is elected pope as Eugene IV
- 1434** An uprising in Rome forces Eugene IV to flee to Florence, where he stays until 1443
- 1440s** Platina serves as a soldier under Francesco Sforza and Niccolò Piccinino
- 1440-1451** Pietro Barbo is Bishop of Cervia and Archdeacon of Bologna
- 1447** Eugene IV dies; Tommaso Parentucelli succeeds him as Pope Nicholas V
- 1449-1453** Platina studies in Mantua at the school started by Vittorino da Feltre
- 1451** Pietro Barbo named Bishop of Vicenza and Cardinal Priest of San Marco
- 1452** Stefano Porcari tries unsuccessfully to overthrow the pope and return Rome to a republic
- 1453-1456** Platina tutors the sons of Ludovico Gonzaga, Marquis of Mantua: namely (future Cardinal) Francesco Gonzaga and his brother, (future Marquis) Federico
- 1455** Nicholas V dies; Alfonso Borgia succeeds him as Pope Callistus III
- 1457** Platina goes to Florence to study Greek with John Argyropoulos

Bartolomeo Platina

- 1458** Callistus III dies; Enea Silvio Piccolomini succeeds him as Pope Pius II
- 1459** Pietro Barbo made Bishop of Padua
- 1460** Tiburzio and the Roman youth revolt against Pius II, briefly hold city
- 1462** Platina travels to Rome with Cardinal Francesco Gonzaga
- 1464, Mar.** Platina becomes an Abbreviator in the Papal Chancery
- 1464, Aug.** Pius II dies; Pietro Barbo succeeds him as Pope Paul II
- 1464, Oct.** Paul II dissolves the College of Abbreviators; Platina protests, threatens a council, and is arrested and imprisoned in Castel Sant'Angelo
- 1465, Jan.** Platina is released from Castel Sant'Angelo
- 1465** Jacopo Piccinino dies in the custody of King Ferdinand of Naples
- 1466** Francesco Sforza, Duke of Milan, dies
- 1467** Battle of Molinella
- 1468, Feb.** Paul II arrests Platina and other members of the Roman Academy
- 1469, Summer** Platina is released from prison
- 1471, July** Paul II dies; Francesco della Rovere succeeds him as Pope Sixtus IV
- 1472-1474** Platina writes the *Lives of the Popes*, dedicates it to Sixtus IV
- 1475** Sixtus IV makes Platina the first head of his new Vatican Library
- 1481, Sept.** Platina dies

## ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	indic.	indicative
abl. abs.	ablative absolute	inf.	infinitive
acc.	accusative	m.	masculine
adj.	adjective	neg.	negative
adv.	adverb	n.	neuter
alt.	alternate	nom.	nominative
CL	Classical Latin	obj.	object(ive)
compar.	comparative	pass.	passive
cond.	condition(al)	perf.	perfect
dat.	dative	pl.	plural
f.	feminine	pluperf.	pluperfect
fut.	future	pres.	present
gen.	genitive	refl.	reflexive
imperf.	imperfect	rel.	relative
impers.	impersonal	sing.	singular
ind.	indirect	subj.	subject
indecl.	indeclinable	superl.	superlative



Bartolomeo Platina  
*Life of Paul II*



## Paulus II

*Born in Venice, Pietro Barbo planned to become a merchant, until his uncle was elected pope*

**1** Paulus Secundus, Petrus Barbo antea vocatus, patria Venetus, patre Nicolao, matre Polyxena, Sancti Marci presbyter cardinalis, pridie Calendas Septembris pontifex creatur [364] MCCCCCLXIII. Is enim Eugenii Pontificis ex sorore nepos, adolescens adhuc iturus

---

<b>adhuc</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): till now, still	
<b>adolescens, -entis</b> (CL <i>adulescens</i> ) <i>m./f.</i> :	
young person	
<b>antea</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): formerly	
<b>Calendae, -arum</b> <i>f.</i> : Kalends, first day of the month	
<b>cardinalis, -is</b> <i>m.</i> : cardinal	
<b>creo, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : create; elect	
<b>nepos, -otis</b> <i>m./f.</i> : nephew	

---

<b>patria, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> : native land, home
<b>pontifex, -ficus</b> <i>m.</i> : pontiff, pope
<b>presbyter, presbyteri</b> <i>m.</i> : priest
<b>pridie</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): day before
<b>sanctus, -i</b> <i>m.</i> : saint
<b>secundus, -a, -um</b> : second
<b>September, -bris</b> <i>m.</i> : September
<b>Venetus, -a, -um</b> : Venetian
<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : to call, name

---

**Petrus Barbo:** Pietro Barbo (*Barbo* is indeclinable)

**patria:** abl. of respect

**patre Nicolao, matre Polyxena:** abls. of origin in asyndeton; Niccolò Barbo was a Venetian nobleman; Polyxena Condulmaro, his wife, was the sister of Pope Eugene IV

**Sancti Marci:** St. Mark's in Rome was dedicated to St. Mark the Evangelist and built in 336 by Pope Mark. Pietro Barbo served as cardinal priest of the church from 1451-1464. See figure 3 (p. 72)

**presbyter cardinalis:** a cardinal who directed one of the titular basilicas in Rome

**pridie Calendas Septembris:** *Calendas* is regularly acc. after *pridie*; “the day before the Kalends of September,” or August 31

**MCCCCCLXIII:** 1464

**Eugenii Pontificis:** Pope Eugene IV (r. 1431-1447), born Gabriele Condulmaro, Pietro Barbo’s uncle

**ex sorore:** abl. of origin “from his sister (i.e on his mother’s side),” referring to Polyxena

**iturus:** fut. act. participle of *eo* “to go”

in mercaturam erat, quae apud Venetos in precio est, et a Solone non improbatur; et iam scrineum et arma in triremes detulerat, cum ei nunciatum est Gabrielem Condulmerium avunculum suum pontificem creatum esse.

*Pietro Barbo abandons his plan to be a merchant in order to prepare for an ecclesiastical career*

**2** Substitit itaque adhortantibus amicis et fratre Paulo Barbo maiore natu ac litteris, licet iam adultus esset, operam dedit,

---

**adhortor, -ari, -atus sum:** encourage  
**adultus, -a, -um:** grown, adult  
**arma, -orum n.:** arms  
**avunculus, -i m.:** maternal uncle  
**creo, -are, -avi, -atus:** create; elect  
**defero, deferre, detuli, delatus:** bring down  
**iam (adv.):** already, by now  
**improbo, -are, -avi, -atus:** disapprove of  
**licet:** although (+ *subjunctive*)  
**litterae, -arum f.:** letters, literature

**mercatura, -ae f.:** trade, commerce  
**natus, -us m.:** birth  
**nuncio, -are, -avi, -atus (CL *nuntio*):**  
    announce  
**opera, -ae f.:** work; effort  
**precium, -i (CL *pretium*) n.:** price, value  
**scrineum, -i (CL *scrinium*) n.:** box, case  
**subsisto, -sistere, -stitti, - :** halt, stand  
**triremis, -is f.:** trireme, ship  
**Venetus, -a, -um:** Venetian

---

**mercaturam ... Venetos:** Venice was one of the wealthiest trading cities in the Renaissance world with a long seafaring tradition. At its height, Venice was the most powerful trading empire in the Eastern Mediterranean

**quae apud ... non improbatur:** in the manuscripts, Platina added this phrase in the margin

**in precio:** idiom, “of value”

**Solone:** a reference to the start of Plutarch’s *Life of Solon* (ch. 2), in which Solon, an Athenian statesman, was said to have spent time as a merchant

**triremes:** a warship with three banks of oars

**cum ... nunciatum est:** temporal *cum* clause; impers., “when it was announced”

**Gabrielem ... creatum esse:** ind. statement introduced by *nunciatum est*

**Gabrielem Condulmerium:** Gabriele Condulmaro, Pietro Barbo’s uncle, who became Pope Eugene IV (r. 1431-47)

**adhortantibus amicis et fratre:** abl. abs.

**Paulo Barbo:** Paolo Barbo, Pietro Barbo’s older brother, an educated humanist, and a member of Venice’s governing body, the Council of Ten

**maiore:** compar. of *magnus*, agreeing with *fratre Paulo Barbo*

**natu:** abl. of respect, greater in respect to age, so “older”

**litteris:** dat. of ind. obj. with *operam dedit*

**operam dedit:** idiom, “put effort into”

praecēptore usus Iacobo Ricionio, qui [365] diligentiam hominis ea in re\* laudare consueverat. Habuit et alias praecēptores, nec tamen ob aetatem admodum profecit; quos omnes praeter Ricionem, dum pontifex esset, dignitate et facultatibus honestiores reddidit, ostendens per eos non stetisse quominus doctior evaderet.

---

<b>admodum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): very much, exceedingly	
<b>aetas, -tatis f.</b> : age	
<b>consueo, -suere, -suevi, -suetus</b> : be accustomed	
<b>dignitas, -tatis f.</b> : honor, rank	
<b>diligentia, -ae f.</b> : diligence	
<b>doctus, -a, -um</b> : learned	
<b>evado, -ere, evasi, evasus</b> : emerge; turn out	
<b>facultas, -tatis f.</b> : capability; means, resources ( <i>pl.</i> )	
<b>honestus, -a, -um</b> : distinguished	
<b>laudo, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : praise	
<b>ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostensus</b> : show; make clear	

---

<b>per</b> : through; on account of (+ <i>acc.</i> )	
<b>pontifex, -ficiis m.</b> : pontiff, pope	
<b>praecēptor, -oris</b> (CL <i>praeceptor</i> ) <i>m.</i> : teacher	
<b>practer</b> : besides, except (+ <i>acc.</i> )	
<b>proficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus</b> : accomplish, make progress	
<b>quominus</b> ( <i>conj.</i> ): that not	
<b>reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus</b> : pay back, render	
<b>sto, -are, steti, status</b> : stand; remain	
<b>utor, uti, usus sum</b> : use, make use of, enjoy (+ <i>abl.</i> )	

**praecēptore**: appositive with *Iacobo Ricionio*

**Iacobo Ricionio**: one of Pietro Barbo's tutors; the last name is 2<sup>nd</sup> declension (or indecl.) here and 3<sup>rd</sup> declension in the next sentence.

**ea**: agreeing with *re*

**in re\***: Platina originally wrote and then later crossed out before printing: ... *in re, et si eius rude ingenium eset* ("although his intellect was coarse")

**quos**: connecting rel., "and all these" referring to the *praecēptores*

**dum ... esset**: *dum* + imperf. subjunctive, "while he was pontifex" (see Introduction 7.C)

**dignite ... facultatibus**: abls. of respect

**honestiores**: compar. of *honestus*; predicate acc. after *quos*, "whom he rendered more distinguished"

**stetisse**: impers. inf. in ind. statement introduced by *ostendens*

**quominus ... evaderet**: prevention clause, "showing that it did not stand on account of them *that he did not turn out more learned*"

**doctior**: nom. sing. masc.; compar. of *doctus*

Pietro quickly rises in the Church hierarchy with the help of his brother, Paolo, and of his uncle, Pope Eugene IV

3 Paulus autem Barbo magni animi ac prudentiae vir, cognita fratris natura, quae potius quietem quam negotia appetebat, Eugenium rogat (nam Florentiam videndi hominis causa venerat) ut Petrum ad se vocet, initiatumque sacris in aliquo dignitatis gradu collocet. Vocatus itaque Petrus, archidiaconatum Bononiensem {231v} ac non ita multo post episcopatum Cerviae commendatione

---

<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod:</b> some
<b>animus, -i m.:</b> mind; intellect
<b>appeto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:</b> desire; long for
<b>archidiaconatus, -us m.:</b> office of archdeacon
<b>Bononiensis, -e:</b> of Bologna
<b>Cervia, -ae f.:</b> Cervia, a town in Italy
<b>cognosco, -noscere, -novi, -nitus:</b> become acquainted with, aware of
<b>colloco, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> place; establish
<b>commendatio, -onis f.:</b> recommendation
<b>dignitas, -tatis f.:</b> rank; office
<b>episcopatus, -us m.:</b> bishopric; bishop's office

<b>Florentia, -ae f.:</b> Florence
<b>gradus, -us m.:</b> position
<b>initio, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> initiate into (+ dat.)
<b>multo (adv.):</b> much; long (before/after)
<b>negocium, -i (CL negotium) n.:</b> work, business
<b>potius (adv.):</b> rather, more
<b>prudentia, -ae f.:</b> good sense, wisdom
<b>quies, -etis f.:</b> quiet, rest, peace
<b>sacrum, -i n.:</b> religious rites (pl.)
<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> to call; summon

**Paulus ... Barbo:** Paolo Barbo (*Barbo* is indeclinable), Pietro's older brother

**animi ... prudentiae:** genitives of description

**cognita ... natura:** abl. abs.

**potius ... quam:** "rather ... than"

**Florentiam:** acc. of place to which; Florence was a powerful republic in Tuscany.

Eugene's papal court was long located in Florence because of civil unrest in Rome  
**videndi ... causa:** *causa* + gen. gerundive to express purpose "for the sake of the man to be seen (i.e. to see the man)"

**ut ... vocet ... collocet:** ind. command dependent on *rogat*

**Petrum:** Pietro Barbo

**initiatumque:** agrees with *Petrum*, "and when he had been initiated"

**commendatione:** abl. of means

adeptus, protonotarius ab avunculo creatur, ex his potissimum qui emolumenterum participes sunt.

*Pietro becomes a cardinal and a rival of Alovius Patavinus*

4 His autem facultatibus aliquot annis vitam dicens, tandem [366] una cum Alovio Patavino medico, quem postea patriarcham et camerarium appellarunt, cardinalis ab Eugenio creatur, instantibus quibusdam Eugenii familiaribus, ut haberent quem Alovisi

---

<b>adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum:</b>	obtain; come into
<b>aliquot (indecl.):</b>	some, several
<b>annus, -i m.:</b>	year
<b>appello, -are, -avi, -atus:</b>	call; address
<b>avunculus, -i m.:</b>	maternal uncle
<b>camerarius, -i m.:</b>	chamberlain
<b>cardinalis, -is m.:</b>	cardinal
<b>creo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b>	create; elect, appoint
<b>emolumenterum, -i n.:</b>	profit; benefit
<b>facultas, -tatis f.:</b>	capability; means, resources (pl.)
<b>familiaris, -is m./f.:</b>	friend; household member

---

<b>insto, -are, institi, - :</b>	urge; press hard
<b>medicus, -i m.:</b>	doctor
<b>particeps, -cipis m./f.:</b>	sharer, partaker
<b>patriarcha, -ae m.:</b>	patriarch (ecclesiastical office)
<b>postea (adv.):</b>	afterwards
<b>potissimum (adv.):</b>	especially
<b>protonotarius, -i m.:</b>	protonotary
<b>quidam, quaedam, quoddam:</b>	a certain one/thing
<b>tandem (adv.):</b>	finally; after some time
<b>una (adv.):</b>	at the same time, together
<b>vita, -ae f.:</b>	life, career

---

**protonotarius:** a chief clerk, one of twelve directly serving under the vice-chancellor, the cardinal in charge of the *Cancellaria Apostolica* (“chancery”), the Curia’s general administrative department

**ex his:** assume *officiis*

**emolumenterum:** obj. gen.

**His ... facultatibus:** abl. of means

**aliquot annis:** abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**Alovio Patavino:** Alovius of Padua, also called Ludovico Trevisan, cardinal priest of San Lorenzo in Rome, patriarch and Cardinal of Aquileia, a military leader, and rival of Pietro Barbo

**quem postea:** refers to Alovius

**camerarium:** “Chamberlain,” the title of the cardinal in charge of the *Camera Apostolica*, which administered papal revenues and properties

**appellarunt:** syncopated from *appella(ve)runt*

**Eugenio:** Pope Eugene IV (r. 1431-47)

**instantibus ... familiaribus:** abl. abs.

**ut haberent:** purpose clause

**quem ... obiicerent:** rel. clause of characteristic, “(to have someone) whom they might put in the way of”

potentiae interdum obiicerent; inter quos postea tanta simultas fuit, ut nusquam maiore odio certatum sit, his etiam discordias alentibus, qui seditionibus ali et augeri consueverant. Dolebat enim Petrus primum locum sibi apud Eugenium subripi, cum nepos esset, cumque etiam patricius Venetus.

*Pietro and Alovisius have a bitter feud*

5 Hanc ob rem inimicitias non vulgares exercuit cum Francisco Condolmerio vicecancellario ex amita Eugenii nato; quo deinceps

**alo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** feed

**amita, -ae f.:** paternal aunt

**augeo, -ere, auxi, auctus:** augment

**certor, -ari, -atus sum:** contend

**consueo, -suere, -suevi, -suetus:** accustom;  
be accustomed

**deinceps (adv.):** thereafter

**discordia, -ae f.:** disagreement, discord

**doleo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** hurt; grieve

**exerceo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** exercise

**inimicitia, -ae f.:** enmity

**interdum (adv.):** sometimes

**locus, -i n.:** rank, position

**natus, -a, -um:** born, arisen (from)

**nepos, -otis m./f.:** nephew

**nusquam (adv.):** never

**obiicio, -ere, obieci, obiectus:** throw before;  
put in the way of

**odium, -i n.:** hatred

**patricius, -i m.:** patrician, noble

**postea (adv.):** afterwards

**potentia, -ae f.:** power

**primus, -a, -um:** first

**seditio, -onis f.:** sedition; rivalry

**simultas, -tatis f.:** rivalry

**subripi, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus:** snatch  
away, steal

**Venetus, -a, -um m.:** Venetian

**vicecancellarius, -i m.:** vice-chancellor

**vulgaris, -e:** common

**potentiae:** dat. with a compound verb, *obiicerent*

**inter quos:** connective rel., “and between them”

**ut ... certatum sit:** impers. pass. in result clause, “there was so great a rivalry *that there was never a contention with greater hatred*”

**maiore odio:** abl. of manner; *maiore* is compar. of *magnus*

**his ... alentibus:** abl. abs. with causal force; *his* looks forward to following *qui*

**discordias:** acc. obj. of *alentibus*

**ali et augeri:** two pres. pass. infinitives, complementary with *consueverant*

**Petrus:** Pietro Barbo

**primum locum ... subripi:** ind. statement initiated by *dolebant*

**cum nepos esset:** concessive *cum* clause, “although he was his nephew”

**cumque ... Venetus (esset):** concessive *cum* clause

**vicecancellario:** cardinal in charge of the *Cancellaria Apostolica* (“chancery”)

**ex amita:** abl. of origin with *nato*

**nato:** in apposition with *Francisco etc.*

**quo ... mortuo:** abl. abs., connective rel.; “and when he died”

mortuo, totum se in patriarcham vertit, licet saepius intercedentibus amicis in gratiam rediissent simulato animo. Hanc ob rem sub diversis pontificibus ita inter se mutuis odiis certarunt, ut alter alteri non pepercerit, sive facultates sive dignitatem inspicias. Iactata et inter eos varia probra sunt, quae consulto praetereo, ne maledicis fidem praestitisse videar.

---

<b>alter, altera, alterum:</b> one, another
<b>animus, -i m.:</b> mind; feelings
<b>certo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> vie (with)
<b>consulto (adv.):</b> deliberately
<b>dignitas, -tatis f.:</b> rank, status
<b>diversus, -a, -um:</b> different
<b>facultas, -tatis f.:</b> capability; estate, resources ( <i>pl.</i> )
<b>fides, fidei f.:</b> faith; credibility
<b>gratia, -ae f.:</b> goodwill
<b>iacto, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> throw, hurl
<b>inspicio, -ere, inspexi, inspectus:</b> observe, consider
<b>intercedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessus:</b> intervene; intercede
<b>licet:</b> although (+ <i>subjunctive</i> )

---

<b>maledicus, -i m.:</b> a slanderer
<b>mutuus, -a, -um:</b> mutual
<b>odium, -i n.:</b> hate, hatred
<b>parco, -ere, peperci, parsus:</b> spare
<b>patriarcha, -ae m.:</b> patriarch (ecclesiastical office)
<b>pontifex, -ficus m.:</b> pontiff, pope
<b>praesto, -stare, -stitti, -stitus:</b> offer, present
<b>praetereo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:</b> omit, pass over
<b>probrum, -i n.:</b> abuse, insult
<b>redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:</b> return
<b>simulo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> simulate; counterfeit
<b>sive (conj.):</b> whether ... or
<b>totus, -a, -um:</b> whole
<b>varius, -a, -um:</b> different; various
<b>verto, -ere, verti, versus:</b> turn

---

<b>saepius:</b> compar. of <i>saepe</i>
<b>intercedentibus amicis:</b> abl. abs.
<b>simulato animo:</b> abl. abs.
<b>certarunt:</b> syncopated from <i>certa(ve)runt</i>
<b>ut ... pepercerit:</b> result clause, perf. subjunctive
<b>alter alteri non pepercerit:</b> “one did not spare the other, and vice versa”: with two forms of <i>alter</i> in different cases, this often implies a comparison where both antecedents of the <i>alter</i> fit both roles
<b>inspicias:</b> potential subjunctive, “(whether) you should consider”
<b>ne ... videar:</b> neg. purpose clause, “lest I seem”; Palatina originally wrote <i>ne vitae utriusque aliqua nota inuratur</i> (“lest a mark of censure be branded upon the life of either”)
<b>praestitisse:</b> perf. inf., complementary with <i>videar</i>

When Eugene IV dies, Pietro Barbo uses charm and manipulation to insinuate himself into the good graces of the new pope, Nicholas V

**6** Mortuo autem Eugenio, cum in eius locum Nicolaus Quintus suffectus esset, tantum apud hominem gratia et blanditiis valuit ut et primum ipse locum e natione sua apud eum tenuerit, fratre Nicolai hominem adiuvante, et ita Nicolaum animaverit ut camerarii dignitatem Alovisio diminueret.

Erat enim Petrus Barbo natura blandus, arte humanus\*, ubi opus erat. Praeterea vero eo indignitatis plerunque deveniebat, cum

---

**adiupo, -are, adiuvi, adiutus:** help  
**animo, -are, -avi, -atus:** animate, rouse  
**ars, artis f.:** skill; craft  
**blanditia, -ae f.:** flattery  
**blandus, -a, -um:** charming, pleasant  
**camerarius, -i m.:** chamberlain  
**devenio, -ire, deveni, deventus:** descend to  
**dignitas, -tatis f.:** rank, status  
**diminuo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** lessen, diminish  
**eo (adv.):** there, to such a point  
**gratia, -ae f.:** grace; charm  
**humanus, -a, -um:** refined; kind  
**indignitas, -tatis f.:** vileness, baseness  
**locus, -i m.:** position; rank

**natio, -onis f.:** nation, people  
**opus, operis n.:** work; need  
**plerunque (CL plerumque) (adv.):** generally, very often  
**praeterea (adv.):** in addition  
**primus, -a, -um:** first  
**sufficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** put in place, vote in  
**tantum (adv.):** so greatly  
**teneo, -ere, tenui, tentus:** hold, possess  
**ubi (adv.):** when  
**valeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** prevail (upon)  
**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact

---

**Mortuo ... Eugenio:** abl. abs.; Pope Eugene IV (r. 1431-1447)

**cum ... suffectus esset:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**Nicolaus Quintus:** Pope Nicholas V (r. 1447-1455), born Tommaso Parentucelli; a major patron of humanism, he established a library at the Vatican and encouraged scholars to work there

**ut ... tenuerit ... animaverit:** result clause, perf. subjunctives

**e natione sua:** “out of his countrymen”

**fratre ... adiuvante:** abl. abs.

**ut ... diminueret:** result clause

**camerarii:** Chamberlain, the cardinal in charge of the *Camera Apostolica*, which handled financial matters

**Alovisio:** dat. of disadvantage; Alovisius of Padua, rival of Pietro Barbo

**natura:** abl. of respect

**humanus\*:** Platina originally wrote but later crossed out before printing: ... *humanus, simulator ac dissimulator* (“a pretender and a dissembler”)

**eo indignitatis:** “to such a degree of indignity”

**cum ... posset:** circumstantial *cum* clause

prēcando, rogando, obtestando quod vellet consequi non posset, ut ad faciendam fidem precibus lachrymas adderet. Hanc ob rem Pius pontifex hominem “Mariam pientissimam” appellare interdum per iocum solebat.

*Pietro uses the same tactics on the next pope, Callistus III, and convinces him to send Alovius away to fight the Turks*

7 His quoque artibus [367] apud Calistum usus, eo perpulit hominem ut Alovium cum triremibus in Thurcos mitteret, ostendens hominis amplitudinem huic tantae rei maxime convenire,

**addo, -ere, addidi, additus:** add  
**amplitudo, -dinis f.:** greatness  
**appello, -are, -avi, -atus:** call  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, trick  
**consequor, -sequi, -secutus sum:** acquire, achieve  
**convenio, -venire, -veni, -ventus:** be appropriate to, fit (+ dat.)  
**eo (adv.):** to such an extent  
**fides, fidei f.:** faith, credibility  
**interdum (adv.):** sometimes  
**iocus, -i m.:** joke  
**lachryma, -ae (CL lacrima) f.:** tear  
**obtestor, -ari, -atus sum:** implore

**ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostensus:** show; suggest  
**per:** through (+ acc.)  
**perpello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus:** compel; prevail upon  
**piens, pientis:** pious, holy  
**pontifex, -ficiis m.:** pontiff, pope  
**prex, precis f.:** prayer, request  
**precōr, -ari, -atus sum (CL precor):** entreat, pray  
**soleo, -ere, -itus sum:** be accustomed (to)  
**Thurcus, -a, -um:** Turkish, (*pl.*) the Turks  
**triremis, -is f.:** trireme, ship  
**utor, uti, usus sum:** use, make use of (+ abl.)  
**volo, velle, volui, - : wish, want**

**prēcando ... obtestando:** gerunds, abls. of means

**quod vellet:** rel. clause of characteristic, antecedent is an assumed obj. of *consequi*  
**ut ... adderet:** result clause

**ad faciendam fidem:** *ad* + acc. gerundive to express purpose, “for credibility to be made (i.e. to establish credibility)”

**Pius pontifex:** Pope Pius II (r. 1458-1464), born Enea Silvio Piccolomini, predecessor of Pope Paul II

**pientissimam:** superl. of *piens*

**per iocum:** “as a joke,” this phrase is not found in A, but Platina added it in the margin of V and F

**Calistum:** Pope Callistus III (r. 1455-1458), born Alfonso de Borgia

**ut ... mitteret:** result clause

**Alovism:** Alovius of Padua, rival of Pietro Barbo

**triremis in Thurcos:** in August 1457, Callistus ordered Alovius to make a naval assault against the Turks at Mytilene; Alovius won and received praise from the pope

**ostendens:** referring to Pietro Barbo, begins an ind. statement

cum alias et exercitus ductasset et ditionem Ecclesiae ab hostibus  
constanter tutatus fuisset. Hac demum molestia liberatus Petrus,  
Calistum deinceps ita in sententiam suam semper traxit ut donec  
vixerit nullius magis quam huius consilio sit usus. Facile praeterea  
quicquid volebat a pontifice impetrabat, sua vel amicorum causa.

*Pietro helps his friends and takes special care of the sick, but perhaps with ulterior motives*

**8** Erat enim propensior in amicos; et quos in clientelam suscepserat quibuscumque rebus poterat iuvabat, ac constantissime tuebatur, cum apud unum quenque magistratum, tum vel maxime apud

**alias** (*adv.*): at another time

**clientela, -ae f.**: clientship

**consilium, -i n.**: advice, counsel

**constanter** (*adv.*): constantly, loyally

**deinceps** (*adv.*) thereafter

**demum** (*adv.*): finally

**ditio, -onis** (*CL dicio*) *f.*: power, authority

**donec** (*conj.*): as long as

**ducto, -are, -avi, -atus**: lead (repeatedly)

**Ecclesia, -ae f.**: the Church

**exercitus, -us m.**: army

**facile** (*adv.*): easily

**hostis, -is m./f.**: enemy

**impetro, -are, -avi, -atus**: obtain

**iupo, -are, iuvi, iutus**: help, assist

**libero, -are, -avi, -atus**: free (from)

**magistratus, -us m.**: magistrate

**molestia, -ae f.**: trouble

**nullus, -a, -um**: no one, not any

**pontifex, -ficus m.**: pontiff, pope

**praeterea** (*adv.*): thereafter

**propensus, -a, -um**: well disposed, favorable

**quiique, quaeque, quodque** (*CL acc.*

*quemque*): each

**quisquis, quicquid**: whoever, whatever

**sententia, -ae f.**: opinion, thought

**suscipio, -cipere, -cepisti** (*CL suscepit*), **-ceptus**:

accept, take up

**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus**: draw (on)

**tueor, -eri, tutus sum**: protect, watch (over)

**tutor, -ari, -atus sum**: guard, defend

**utor, uti, usus sum**: use, make use of (+ *abl.*)

**vivo, -ere, vixi, victus**: live

**volo, velle, volui, - : wish, want**

**cum ... ductasset ... fuisset**: causal *cum* clause; *ducta(vi)sset* the syncopated form

**Hac ... molestia**: abl. of separation, referring to Pietro Barbo's rival Alovius

**ut ... sit usus**: result clause, subject is Callistus

**vixerit**: subjunctive by attraction, "so long as he lived"

**nullius**: gen. sing., "the advice of *no one* more than this man"

**sua ... causa**: *sua* agrees with *causa*, "for his own sake or that of his friends"

**propensior**: compar. of *propensus*

**quibuscumque rebus poterat**: "by means of whatever things he was able"

**cum ... tum**: "not only ... but also"

pontificem. Tantae praeterea humanitatis fuit\* ut in aegritudinibus curiales ipsos, qui aliquo in precio erant, inviseret, et quibusdam remediis adhibitis eos ad valitudinem adhortaretur. Semper enim domi habebat unguenta Venetiis avecta: oleum, tyriacam, et cetera id genus, quae ad curandam valitudinem faciunt. Ex his aliquod ad aegrotos mittebat. Curabat item ut uni sibi magis quam alteri aegrotantium testamenta committerentur, quae postea ex arbitrio

---

<b>adhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:</b> use, apply	<b>humanitas, -tatis</b> <i>f.</i> kindness
<b>adhortor, -ari, -atus sum:</b> encourage, rally	<b>inviso, -ere, invisi, invisus:</b> go to see, visit
<b>aegritudo, -dinis</b> <i>f.</i> : sickness, disease	<b>item (adv.):</b> likewise, also
<b>aegroto, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> be sick	<b>oleum, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : oil, olive oil
<b>aegrotus, -a, -um:</b> sick, diseased	<b>pontifex, -ficus</b> <i>m.</i> : pontiff, pope
<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod:</b> someone, something	<b>postea (adv.):</b> afterwards
<b>arbitrium, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : choice, judgment	<b>praeterea (adv.):</b> besides, in addition
<b>aveho, -ere, avexi, avectus:</b> carry away; export	<b>precium, -i</b> <i>n.</i> ( <i>CL pretium</i> ): price, worth
<b>committo, -mittere, -misi, -missus:</b> entrust	<b>quidam, quaedam, quoddam:</b> certain one/thing
<b>curialis, -is</b> <i>m.</i> : member of the curia	<b>remedium, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : remedy, medicine
<b>curo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> take care of; provide for	<b>testamentum, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : will
<b>ceterus, -a, -um</b> ( <i>CL ceterus</i> ): the remaining, rest, other	<b>tyriaca, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> : antidote
<b>domus, -i</b> <i>f.</i> : house, home	<b>unguentum, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : perfume, ointment
<b>genus, generis</b> <i>n.</i> : kind, sort	<b>valitudo, -dinis</b> <i>f.</i> : good health
	<b>Venetiae, -arum</b> <i>f.</i> : Venice

---

**Tantae ... humanitatis:** gen. of description

**fuit\*:** Platina originally added and later crossed out before printing: ... *fuit sive illa vera fuerit sive facta* (“whether it might have been true or fabricated”)

**ut ... inviseret ... adhortaretur:** result clause

**aliquo in precio:** “of some worth”

**quibusdam remediis adhibitis:** abl. of means

**domi:** locative

**Venetiis:** abl. of place from which; in the manuscripts, Platina added the words

*Venetiis avecta* in the margin

**oleum, tyriacam, et cetera:** appositives to *unguenta avecta*

**id genus:** idiom, “of that sort”

**ad curandam valitudinem:** *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “for health to be taken care of (i.e. to take care of health)”

**Curabat item ut:** Platina originally wrote, then crossed out, *subornatis servis* (“having bribed the servants”)

**ut ... committerentur:** noun clause, obj. of *curabat*

**ex arbitrio suo:** “in accordance with his judgement”

suo partiebatur: et si quid inerat quod ad rem suam pertineret, factotamen sub hasta precio, id sibi pecunia vindicabat.

*Pietro's charm makes him popular in Rome and in the Papal Curia*

**9** Romanorum vero quorundam amicitia delectatus est, quos saepe in convivium adhibebat, tum ad iocum, tum ad risum: quem et Priabisius suus et Franciscus Malacaro salibus, mimis, dicteriis, scommatibus {232R} frequenter non sine urbanitate excitabant. His quidem artibus effecerat ut tum civibus Romanis tum aulicis ipsis carus esse putaretur.

**adhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** invite

**aliquis, aliquid:** someone, something

**amicitia, -ae f.:** friendship

**ars, artis f.:** craft, trick

**aulicus, -i m.:** courtier

**carus, -a, -um:** dear, beloved

**civis, -is m./f.:** citizen

**convivium, -i n.:** banquet, dinner party

**delector, -ari, -atus sum:** be delighted, take pleasure

**dicterium, -i n.:** witticism

**efficio, -ere, effeci, effectus:** bring about

**excito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up, excite

**frequenter (adv.):** frequently

**hasta, -ae f.:** spear

**insum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:** be there; be in

**iocus, -i m.:** joke

**mimus, -i m.:** farce

**partior, -iri, -itus sum:** divide up, distribute

**pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus:** relate to, pertain to

**precium, -i (CL *pretium*) n.:** price

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** certain one/thing

**risus, -us m.:** laughter

**sal, salis m.:** salt; wit

**scomma, -atis n.:** joke, taunt

**sine:** without (+ *abl.*)

**urbanitas, -tatis f.:** sophistication, wit

**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact

**vindico, -are, -avi, -atus:** claim

**si quid:** “if anything” (after *si, nisi, num* and *ne*, “ali” takes a holiday)

**quod ... pertineret:** rel. clause of characteristic

**facto ... precio:** abl. abs., “when the value had been determined”

**sub hasta:** a spear was placed in the ground to mark the location of a public auction

**amicitia:** abl. with *delectatus est*

**tum ... tum:** “now ... now”

**quem:** connecting rel., referring to Pietro Barbo

**Priabisius ... Franciscus Malacaro:** identities not certain

**salibus, mimis, dicteriis, scommatibus:** abls. of means

**non sine urbanitate:** in the manuscripts, Platina added this phrase in the margin

(and in A it appears in the slightly different form *cum urbanitate*)

**His ... artibus:** abl. of means

**ut ... putaretur:** noun clause, obj. of *effecerat*

**tum ... tum:** “both ... and,” followed by dats. of reference

**carus esse:** ind. statement introduced by *putaretur*; *carus* nom. agreeing with the subject

Pietro also has success outside of Rome, although it makes him an enemy of Count Everso

**10** Praeterea autem ne domi tantum posse videretur, foris etiam auctoritatem sibi comparare annixus est. Nam et in Hernicos, quam nunc Campaniam Romanam vocant, profectus est ad populos quosdam sedandos, qui [368] de finibus contendebant; et litem componere inter comitem Aversae et Neapolionem Ursinum conatus, paulum abfuit quin turpiter captus in vincula coniiceretur; adeo in

---

<b>absum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:</b> be away	<b>lis, litis</b> <i>f.</i> : lawsuit, quarrel
<b>adeo</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): to such a degree	<b>nunc</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): now
<b>annitor, anniti, annixus sum:</b> strive, try	<b>paulum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): by a little; barely
<b>auctoritas, -tatis f.:</b> power, authority	<b>populus, -i m.:</b> people
<b>capiro, -ere, cepi, captus:</b> take hold, capture	<b>praeterea</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): in addition
<b>comes, comitis m.:</b> companion; count	<b>proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum:</b> set out; proceed
<b>comparo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> provide, procure	<b>quidam, quaedam, quoddam:</b> certain one/thing
<b>compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:</b> settle	<b>quin:</b> so that not, that not
<b>coniicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectus:</b> throw	<b>sedo, -are, -avi, -atus</b> (CL <i>sedo</i> ): settle; pacify
<b>conor, -ari, -atus sum:</b> attempt, try	<b>tantum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): only
<b>contendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus:</b> contend, dispute	<b>turpiter</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): disgracefully
<b>domus, -i f.:</b> house, home	<b>vinculum, -i n.:</b> chain
<b>finis, -is m./f.:</b> limit, boundary	<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> to call, name
<b>foris</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): abroad	
<b>Hernicus, -a, um:</b> Hernician, a people in Latium	

---

**ne ... videretur:** neg. purpose clause; *video* in pass. is “seem”

**domi:** locative; here “at home” has the sense of “in domestic matters,” in contrast with *foris*

**posse:** complementary inf. with *videretur*; here, “to be powerful”

**sibi:** dat. of advantage

**in Hernicos:** substantive assuming *fines*, “into the Hernician (territory)”

**Campaniam Romanam:** Roman Campania, the countryside surrounding Rome; different from the southern “Campania” region around Naples

**ad ... sedandos:** *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “for certain peoples to be pacified (i.e. to pacify certain peoples)”

**comitem Aversae:** the Count Everso degli Anguillara (d. 1464), whom Platina seemingly mistakenly calls “the Count of Aversa”

**Neapolionem Ursinum:** Napoleone Orsini, an Italian *condottiero* (mercenary leader) from Naples and a rival of Count Everso

**quin ... coniiceretur:** prevention clause, “(it was barely absent) that he, having been disgracefully captured, be thrown into chains”

eum comes Aversus ob quandam verborum licentiam male animatus erat. Re itaque infecta abiens, homini semper adversatus est.

*When Callistus III dies, Pietro finds his ambitions thwarted by the new pope, Pius II*

**11** Mortuo deinde Calisto, in eiusque locum Pio suffecto, cum permutare episcopatum Vincetinum in Patavinum instando acerbe nimium rogandoque anniteretur, et Pii pontificis et Venetorum iram adeo incurrit ut et Paulum fratrem senatorio munere amoverint

---

**abeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** depart, go away  
**acerbe (adv.):** stridently, harshly  
**adeo (adv.):** to such an extent  
**adversor, -ari, -atus sum:** be against, oppose  
    (+ dat.)  
**amooveo, -ere, amovi, amotus:** remove  
**animo, -are, -avi, -atus:** rouse, animate  
**annitor, anniti, annixus sum:** strive, try  
**comes, comitis m.:** companion; count  
**deinde (adv.):** then  
**episcopatus, -us m.:** bishopric, bishop's office  
**incurro, -ere, incucurri, incursus:** meet  
    (with); incur  
**infecetus, -a, -um:** unfinished, incomplete  
**insto, -are, institi, -i :** pursue; insist  
**ira, -ae f.:** anger; resentment  
**licentia, -ae f.:** freedom

**locus, -i m.:** rank, position  
**male (adv.):** badly, terribly  
**munus, muneris n.:** office  
**nimium (adv.):** too, very  
**Patavinus, -a, -um:** Paduan, of Padua  
**permuto, -are, -avi, -atus:** exchange (for);  
    swap  
**pontifex, -ficus m.:** pontiff, pope  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam (CL**  
    *quamdam*): certain  
**senatorius, -a, -um:** of a senator, senatorial  
**sufficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** put in place,  
    vote in  
**Venetus, -a, -um m.:** Venetian  
**verbum, -i n.:** word  
**Vi(n)cetinus, -a, -um:** of Vicenza (a town  
    near Venice)

---

**quandam verborum licentiam:** “a certain freedom of words,” that is, Pietro Barbo

was free with his speech, angering Everso

**Re ... infecta:** abl. abs.

**Mortuo ... Calisto:** abl. abs.; Pope Callistus III (r. 1455-1458)

**Pio suffecto:** abl. abs.; Pope Pius II (r. 1458-1464), born Enea Silvio Piccolomini

**in Patavinum:** Platina originally wrote, then crossed out, *melioris proventus causa* (“for the sake of greater profit”)

**cum ... anniteretur:** causal *cum* clause

**instando, rogandoque:** gerunds, abls. of means

**et ... et:** “both ... and,” coordinating Pius and the Venetians, not *anniteretur* and  
    *incurrerit*

**incurrerit:** main verb

**ut ... amoverint ... interdixerint:** result clause

**Paulum fratrem:** Pietro's older brother, Paolo Barbo

**senatorio munere:** abl. of separation

et ei interdixerint quominus aliorum beneficiorum proventibus potiretur, nisi sententiam mutaret. Hanc ob rem indignatus homo, ulciscendi tempus observans, interim acerbe nimium in eos invehebatur per quos stetisset quominus voto potiretur.

*When Pius II dies, Pietro gets elected pope, becoming Paul II; he quickly disbands the College of Abbreviators*

**12** Mortuo autem Pio, in eius locum ipse suffectus, statim ubi magistratum iniit, sive quod ita pollicitus erat, sive quod Pii decreta

---

**acerbe** (*adv.*): stridently, harshly  
**beneficium, -i n.**: benefice, a Church-owned  
fief  
**decretum, -i n.**: decree, decision  
**indignor, -ari, -atus sum**: be indignant  
**ineo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus**: enter  
**interdico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus**: forbid  
**interim** (*adv.*): meanwhile, at the same time  
**inveho, -ere, invexi, invectus**: drive; (*pass.*)  
    inveigh against  
**locus, -i m.**: occupation, position  
**magistratus, -us m.**: office, magistracy  
**muto, -are, -avi, -atus**: change  
**nimum** (*adv.*): too, excessively  
**observo, -are, -avi, -atus**: watch (for)

**per**: by, by means of (+ *acc.*)  
**pollicor, -eri, -itus sum**: promise  
**potior, -iri, -itus sum**: obtain, acquire,  
    possess (+ *abl.*)  
**proventus, -us m.**: income; produce  
**sententia, -ae f.**: opinion  
**sive ... sive**: whether ... or  
**statim** (*adv.*): immediately  
**sto, -are, steti, status**: stand, remain  
**sufficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus**: put in place,  
    vote in  
**tempus, temporis n.**: time, occasion  
**ubi** (*adv.*): when  
**ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum**: avenge  
**votum, -i n.**: vote

---

**ei**: dat. with a compound verb, *interdixerint*

**quominus ... potiretur**: prevention clause, “(they forbid) that he obtain the incomes  
of other benefits”

**ulciscendi**: gerund, obj. gen.; “for avenging”

**stetisset**: subjunctive of alleged reason

**quominus ... potiretur**: prevention clause dependent on *per quos stetisset*, “that he  
not have a vote”

**Mortuo ... Pio**: abl. abs.; Pope Pius II (r. 1458-1464)

**ipse**: Pietro Barbo, now Pope Paul II; he also considered the names Formosus (re-  
jected as too immodest) and Mark (too Venetian)

**quod ... pollicitus erat ... quod ... oderat**: *quod* causal clauses, “because he had  
promised ... because he hated;” the former is an insinuation that Paul had gotten  
the support of Rodrigo Borgia, the vice-chancellor, by promising to disband the  
abbreviators, which would give Borgia more control over the chancery

et acta oderat, abbreviatores omnes, quos Pius in ordinem redigerat, tanquam inutiles et indoctos, ut ipse dicebat, exauctoravit. Eos enim bonis et dignitate indicta causa spoliavit: quos etiam propter eruditionem et doctrinam ex toto orbe terrarum conquisitos, magnis pollicitationibus et praemiis vocare ad se debuerat. Erat quidem illud collegium refertum bonis ac doctis viris. Inerant divini atque humani iuris viri peritissimi. Inerant poetae et oratores plerique, qui

**abbreviator, -oris** *m.*: clerk  
**actum, -i** *n.*: act, deed  
**bona, -orum** *n.*: goods; wealth, estate (*pl.*)  
**collegium, -i** *n.*: college, corporate body  
**conquirro, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus**: seek out  
**deboeo, -ere, -ui, -itus**: ought, should  
**dignitas, -tatis** *f.*: status; position  
**divinus, -a, -um**: divine  
**doctrina, -ae** *f.*: teaching  
**doctus, -a, -um**: learned, wise  
**eruditio, -onis** *f.*: instruction, education  
**exauctoro, -are, -avi, -atus**: release, dismiss  
**humanus, -a, -um**: human  
**indictus, -a, -um**: not mentioned; unheard  
**indoctus, -a, -um**: ignorant  
**insum, -esse, -fui, -futurus**: be there; belong  
**inutilis, -e**: useless  
**ius, iuris** *n.*: law

**odi, odisse**: hate  
**orator, -oris** *m.*: speaker, orator  
**orbis, -is** *m.*: circle  
**ordo, ordinis** *m.*: rank  
**peritus, -a, -um**: skilled, experienced (+ *gen.*)  
**plerusque, -aque, -umque**: very many  
**poeta, -ae** *m.*: poet  
**pollicitatio, -onis** *f.*: promise  
**praemium, -i** *n.*: reward, gift  
**propter**: on account of; because of (+ *acc.*)  
**redigo, -ere, redegi** (*CL redigi*), **redactus**: render; gather  
**refercio, -ire, refersi, refertus**: fill up  
**spolio, -are, -avi, -atus**: rob, strip  
**tanquam** (*CL tamquam*): just as if  
**terra, -ae** *f.*: earth, land  
**totus, -a, -um**: whole, all, entire  
**voco, -are, -avi, -atus**: to call

**abbreviatores**: abbreviators worked in the chancery drafting papal bulls; Platina himself was among the abbreviators who lost their positions

**bonis et dignitate**: abls. of separation

**indicta causa**: abl. abs. with concessive sense

**quos**: antecedent is *eos* at the beginning of the sentence

**orbe terrarum**: “the whole world”

**magnis pollicitationibus et praemis**: abls. of means

**Erat ... refertum**: perf. pass., subject is *illud collegium*

**peritissimi**: superl. of *peritus*

**poetae et oratores**: these words are often used to describe humanists

certe non minus ornamenti ipsi curiae afferebant, quam ab eadem acciperent, quos omnes Paulus tanquam inquilinos et advenas possessione pepulit, licet emptoribus cautum esset litteris apostolicis, cautum etiam fisci pontificii auctoritate ne qui bona fide emissent e possessione honesta ac legitima deiicerentur.

*Platina and the Abbreviators try to take Paul to trial, provoking his anger*

[369] 13 Tentarunt tamen ii, ad quos res ipsa pertinebat, hominem e sententia dimovere. Atque ego certe, qui horum de numero

**accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptus:** receive  
**advena, -ae m./f.:** foreigner  
**affero, afferre, attuli, allatus:** bring to  
**apostolicus, -a, -um:** apostolic  
**auctoritas, -tatis f.:** decree, order; authority  
**caveo, -ere, cavi, cautus:** beware; stipulate  
**certe (adv.):** surely, certainly  
**curia, -ae f.:** papal court  
**deicio, -ere, deieci, deiectus:** drive/throw out  
**dimoveo, -ere, dimovi, dimotus (CL demoveo):** move (away)  
**emo, -ere, emi, emptus:** buy; gain, acquire, obtain  
**emptor, -oris m.:** buyer, purchaser  
**fides, fidei f.:** faith, credit  
**fiscus, -i m.:** treasury

**honestus, -a, -um:** honest  
**inquilinus, -i m.:** traveler; lodger  
**legitimus, -a, -um:** lawful; legitimate  
**licet:** although (+ subjunctive)  
**litterae, -arum f.:** a letter (epistle)  
**numerus, -i m.:** number, rank  
**ornamentum, -i n.:** ornament; distinction  
**pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsus:** drive out  
**pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus:** concerns, pertain to  
**pontificius, -a, -um:** pontifical  
**possessio, -onis f.:** possession, property  
**sententia, -ae f.:** opinion; decision  
**tanquam (CL tamquam):** as, just as, just as if  
**tento, -are, -avi, -atus:** attempt, try

**minus ornamenti:** *minus* is compar. of *parvus* (in neut. sing. acc.); *ornamenti* partitive gen., “less (of) distinction”  
**quam ... acciperent:** compar. clause set up by *non minus*, “than they might receive”  
**possessione:** abl. of separation  
**emptoribus:** dat. of reference, the abbreviators had purchased their office  
**cautum esset ... cautum (esset):** 3<sup>rd</sup> person pass. subjunctive with *licet*  
**litteris apostolicis:** abl. of means; an apostolic letter is a papal bull  
**ne ... deiicerentur:** neg. ind. command  
**qui ... emissent:** rel. clause of characteristic with an elided antecedent *ii* serving as the subject of *deiicerentur*, “those who had bought with good faith”  
**possessione:** abl. of separation modified by *honesta* and *legitima*  
**Tentarunt:** syncopated from *tenta(ve)runt*  
**ii:** the dismissed abbreviators  
**e sententia:** abl. of separation, “from his decision”  
**ego:** Platina intrudes into the narrative for the first time  
**horum:** partitive gen.

eram, rogando etiam ut causa ipsa iudicibus publicis, quos rotae auditores vocant, committeretur—tum ille torvis oculis me aspiciens, “Ita nos,” inquit, “ad iudices revocas? Ac si nescires omnia iura in scrineo pectoris nostri collocata esse? Sic stat sententia,” inquit, “loco cedant omnes, eant quo volunt, nihil eos moror, pontifex sum, mihiique licet pro arbitrio animi aliorum acta et rescindere et approbare.”

**actum, -i** *n.*: act, deed

**animus, -i** *m.*: mind

**aprobo, -are, -avi, -atus**: approve, endorse, allow

**arbitrium, -i** *n.*: judgment; will

**aspicio, -ere, aspexi, aspectus**: look on/at

**cedo, -ere, cessi, ccessus**: withdraw, leave

**colloco, -are, -avi, -atus**: put together, locate

**committo, -mittere, -misi, -missus**: commit, entrust

**inquam, -, -, -** : say

**iudex, iudicis** *m.*: judge; juror

**ius, iuris** *n.*: law

**licet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.)**: it is permitted

**locus, -i** *m.*: place, position

**moror, -ari, -atus sum**: delay

**nescio, -ire, -ivi, -itus**: not know, be unaware

**oculus, -i** *m.*: eye

**pectus, pectoris** *n.*: breast, heart; feeling, soul, mind

**pontifex, -ficus** *m.*: pontiff, pope

**pro**: according to (+ *abl.*)

**publicus, -a, -um**: public; common, of the people/state; official

**quo** (*adv.*): to where

**rescindo, -ere, rescidi, rescissus**: annul; rescind

**revoco, -are, -avi, -atus**: refer

**scrineum, -i** (CL *scrinium*) *n.*: box, case

**sententia, -ae** *f.*: opinion

**sic** (*adv.*): thus

**sto, -are, steti, status**: stand; remain

**torvus, -a, -um**: pitiless, stern

**voco, -are, -avi, -atus**: to call, name

**volo, velle, volui, -** : wish, want

**rogando**: abl. gerund, exact sense unclear since main verb is lacking

**ut ... committeretur**: ind. command dependent on *rogando*

**rotae auditores**: the Rota was a judicial body in the Curia; *auditores* here is the predicate of *quos*, “whom they call the auditors”

**Tum**: this cuts off the previous sentence, which lacks a main verb, creating an anacolouthon that gives a sense of Paul interrupting Platina

**Ac si**: “as if”

**Ac si ... nescires**: protasis of a pres. contrafactual cond. with an elided apodosis

**omnia iura ... collocata esse**: ind. statement

**loco**: abl. of separation

**cedant ... eant**: jussive subjunctives

**nihil**: adverbial, “in no way”

**mihiique**: dat. of reference with *licet*

**pro arbitrio animi**: “by the judgment of my mind”

**rescidere et approbare**: subject infinitives of *licet*

*The Abbreviators try to change Paul's mind, but can no longer gain an audience*

**14** Hac vero tam immitti sententia accepta, ut lapidem immobilem volveremus, {232v} obversabamur et frustra quidem die ac noctu in foribus aulae, vilissimum etiam quenque servum rogantes ut nobis alloqui pontificem liceret. Reicciebamur non sine contumelia tanquam aqua et igni interdicti ac prophani. Hac autem diligentia viginti continuis noctibus usi sumus; nil enim fere nisi noctu agebat.

**accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptus** (CL *acceptus*):

receive, accept

**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** do

**alloquor, alloqui, allocutus sum:** speak to,  
address

**aqua, -ae f.:** water

**aula, -ae f.:** court

**continuus, -a, -um:** continuous

**contumelia, -ae f.:** insult

**dies, diei m./f.:** day

**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence

**fere (adv.):** almost; nearly

**foris, -is f.:** door, gate

**frustra (adv.):** in vain

**ignis, -is m.:** fire

**immitis, -e:** cruel, harsh, stern

**immobilis, -e:** immovable

**interdico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus:** forbid,  
prohibit

**lapis, -idis m.:** stone

**licet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.):** it is  
permitted

**nil (indecl.):** nothing

**noctu (adv.):** by night

**nox, noctis f.:** night

**obversor, -ari, -atus sum:** appear before, take  
a position outside

**pontifex, -ficus m.:** pontiff, pope

**prophanus, -a, -um (CL *profanus*):** profane,  
impious

**quisque, quaeque, quodque (CL acc.  
quemque):** each

**reicio, -ere, reieci, reiectus:** repel; reject

**sententia, -ae f.:** opinion, sentence

**servus, -i m.:** slave; servant

**sine:** without (+ abl.)

**tam (adv.):** so, to such an extent/degree

**tanquam (CL *tamquam*):** just as if

**utor, uti, usus sum:** use, make use of,  
practice (+ abl.)

**vero:** but, however

**viginti (indecl.):** twenty

**vilis, -e:** common

**volvo, -ere, volvi, volutus:** turn over

**Hac ... immitti sententia accepta:** abl. abs.

**ut ... volveremus:** “as if,” contrafactual comparison

**et:** “even”

**die:** abl. of time when

**vilissimum ... quenque:** “each (of the) vilest”

**ut ... liceret:** ind. command dependent on *rogantes*

**alloqui:** subject inf. of *liceret*

**aqua et igni:** abls. of separation, “forbidden from water and fire,” a reference to  
a punishment in Ancient Rome under which it was forbidden for someone to  
receive any aid

**interdicti ac prophani:** nom. pl. masc., agreeing with the subject of *reicciebamur*

**viginti continuis noctibus:** abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**nil ... nisi noctu:** Platina also comments on Paul’s nocturnal habits in ch. 83

*Platina, infuriated, writes a letter decrying the injustice of the dismissal and calling for a Church Council to overrule Paul's decision*

**15** Ego vero tanta ignominia excitus, quod mihi ac sociis meis coram non licebat, id agere per litteras institui. Scripsi itaque epistolam his ferme verbis: “Si tibi licuit indicta causa spoliare nos emptione nostra iusta ac legittima, debet et nobis licere conqueri illatam iniuriam iniustamque ignominiam. Reiecti a te, ac tam insigni contumelia affecti, dilabemur passim ad reges, ad principes,

---

**afficio, -ere, affeci, affectus:** afflict  
**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** do; handle, manage  
**conqueror, -queri, -questus sum:** complain of  
**contumelia, -ae f.:** abuse, insult  
**coram (adv.):** in person, face-to-face  
**debeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** ought  
**dilabor, dilabi, dilapsus sum:** flee, escape, disperse  
**emptio, -onis f.:** acquisition  
**epistola, -ae f.:** letter  
**excio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** summon; rouse  
**ferme (adv.):** almost, precisely  
**ignominia, -ae f.:** disgrace, ignominy, dishonor  
**indictus, -a, -um:** not said; unheard  
**infero, inferre, intuli, illatus:** inflict  
**iniuria, -ae f.:** injury; injustice  
**iniustus, -a, -um:** unequal

---

**insignis, -e:** remarkable, extraordinary  
**instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** decide  
**iustus, -a, -um:** just; lawful  
**legittimus, -a, -um (CL *legitimus*):** legitimate  
**licet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.):** it is permitted  
**litterae, -arum f.:** a letter (epistle)  
**passim (adv.):** here and there; everywhere  
**per :** through; by means of (+ acc.)  
**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader; prince  
**reicio, -ere, reieci, reiectus (CL *reiectus*):** reject, scorn  
**scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptus:** write; compose  
**socius, -i m.:** associate, companion  
**spolio, -are, -avi, -atus:** rob, deprive (+ abl.)  
**tam (adv.):** so, so much  
**verbum, -i n.:** word  
**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact

---

**tanta ignominia:** abl. of means  
**quod:** “that which,” antecedent is the following *id*  
**id:** referring to the act of communicating with Paul II  
**agere:** obj. inf. of *institui*  
**his ... verbis:** abl. of description  
**indicta causa:** abl. abs. with concessive sense  
**spoliare:** subject inf. of *licuit*  
**debet:** impers., “it ought”  
**licere:** complementary inf. with *debet*  
**conqueri:** subject inf. of *licere*  
**insigni contumelia:** abl. of means

eosque adhortabimur ut tibi concilium indicant, in quo potissimum rationem reddere cogaris, cur nos legitima possessione spoliaveris."

*Paul jails Platina for treason, on charges of libel and summoning a council; Platina counters that libel is anonymous, whereas Platina signed his name on the letter*

**16** Lectis litteris, Platynam [370] reum maiestatis accersit, in carcerem trahit, compedibus revincit, mittit Theodorum Tarvisinum episcopum, qui questionem habeat. Is statim me reum facit, quod et libellos famosos in Paulum sparsissem, et concilii mentionem

---

**accersio, -ire, - , -**: summon  
**adhortor, -ari, -atus sum**: encourage, rally  
**carcer, -eris m.**: prison  
**cogo, -ere, coegi, coactus**: force, compel  
**compes, -edis f.**: shackles  
**concilium, -i n.**: council  
**cur (adv.)**: why; for what reason/purpose  
**episcopus, -i m.**: bishop  
**famosus, -a, -um**: slanderous  
**indico, -ere, indixi, indictus**: declare  
**legitimus, -a, -um**: lawful; legitimate  
**lego, -ere, legi, lectus**: read  
**libellus, -i m.**: pamphlet  
**litterae, -arum f.**: letter (epistle)

**maiestas, -tatis f.**: greatness; high treason  
**mentio, -onis f.**: mention  
**possessio, -onis f.**: property  
**potens, potentis**: strong; capable  
**questio, -onis (CL *quaestio*) f.**: inquiry  
**ratio, -onis f.**: account  
**reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus**: deliver  
**reus, -i m.**: accused, defendant; guilty, culprit  
**revincio, -ire, revinxi, revinctus**: bind fast  
**spargo, -ere, sparsi, sparsus**: disseminate  
**spolio, -are, -avi, -atus**: rob, strip (+ abl.)  
**statim (adv.)**: immediately  
**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus**: drag

**ut ... indicant**: ind. command

**tibi**: dat. of disadvantage

**concilium**: some argued that Church Councils could overrule popes, a position called "conciliarism"; this was a major threat, since the councils of Constance (1414-1418) and Basel (1431-1449) had deposed (or attempted to depose) several popes

**quo ... cogaris**: rel. clause of characteristic; *cogaris* is a pres. pass. subjunctive

**potissimum**: superl. adv. of *potens*, here "most of all"

**cur ... spoliaveris**: ind. question; *spoliaveris* is a perf. subjunctive

**possessione**: abl. of separation

**Platynam**: Platina now refers to himself in third person

**reum maiestatis**: defendant on a charge of high treason; *maiestas* here means "(diminishing the) greatness (of the state)"

**Theodorum Tarvisinum episcopum**: Teodoro Lelli, Bishop of Treviso, was one of Paul II's chief advisers

**qui ... habeat**: rel. clause of purpose, "in order that he may hold an inquiry"

**me (esse) reum facit**: "he found me guilty"

**quod... sparsissem... fecissem**: clause of alleged reason, "on the grounds that I had..."

fecissem. Primum crimen ita confutavi: eos quidem dici libellos famosos, in quibus scribentis nomen reticetur, at meum nomen in calce litterarum extare; non igitur libelli famosi sunt.

*Platina counters the second accusation by pointing out the authority of the ancient Ecumenical Councils*

17 Quod vero de concilio mentionem fecerim, me non adeo grave crimen id putasse, cum in synodis a sanctis patribus stabilita sint fundamenta orthodoxae fidei, prius sparsim iacta a Salvatore nostro

**adeo** (*adv.*): to such a degree  
**calx, calcis** *m.f.*: heel; bottom  
**concilium, -i** *n.*: council  
**confuto, -are, -avi, -atus**: disprove  
**crimen, criminis** *n.*: accusation, charge; crime  
**exto, -are, extiti, -** : stand forth; be visible  
**famosus, -a, -um**: slanderous  
**fides, fidei** *f.*: faith  
**fundamentum, -i** *n.*: foundation  
**gravis, -e**: serious  
**iacio, -ere, ieci, iactus**: throw; spread  
**igitur**: therefore  
**libellus, -i** *m.*: pamphlet

**litterae, -arum** *f.*: letter, epistle  
**mentio, -onis** *f.*: mention  
**orthodoxus, -a, -um**: orthodox  
**primus, -a, -um**: first  
**prius** (*adv.*): previously  
**reticeo, -ere, -ui, -** : leave unsaid  
**salvator, -oris** *m.*: savior  
**sanctus, -a, -um**: sacred, holy  
**scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptus**: write  
**sparsim** (*adv.*): in a scattered way  
**stabilio, -ire, -ivi, -itus**: make firm, establish  
**synodus, -i** *m.*: synod, general council  
**vero**: but, however

**libellos famosos**: a reference to the letter quoted above (ch. 15), criticizing Paul for disbanding the Abbreviators

**concilii**: a Church Council might remove (or attempt to remove) a pope, meaning that the call for a council could be interpreted as a threat to overthrow Paul

**eos ... dici, meum ... extare**: ind. statements recounting Platina's defense

**quibus**: *eos ... libellos* is the antecedent

**scribentis**: possessive gen. dependent on *nomen*

**meum nomen**: Platina originally tried to circulate the letter anonymously, which undercuts his (already somewhat specious) argument

**Quod ... fecerim**: noun clause, "the fact that I made mention of a council"

**me ... putasse**: ind. statement still giving Platina's rebuttal, more easily understood in the following order: *me non putasse id (esse) adeo grave crimen*

**id**: referring to the above noun clause *Quod ... fecerim*

**putasse**: syncopated from *puta(vi)sse*

**cum ... stabilita sint**: causal *cum* clause, subject is *fundamenta*

**sanctis patribus**: the early Church fathers who had set out the principles of Christianity in the ecumenical councils

**iacta**: agrees with *fundamenta*

**Salvatore ... discipulis**: Jesus and the apostles

eiusque discipulis, ut maiores cum minoribus aequo iure viverent, ne cuiquam fieret iniuria. Unde etiam apud Romanos instituta est censura, qua, et qui privati et qui in magistratu fuerunt, rationem habiti magistratus et vitae ante actae reddere cogebantur.

*Platina's pleas are unsuccessful, but he is ultimately freed through the help of his patron, Cardinal Francesco Gonzaga*

**18** Cum vero his rationibus nihil profecissem, revinctus comedibus, et quidem gravissimis, media hyeme sine foco celsa in turri ac

---

<b>aequus, -a, -um:</b> fair, equal
<b>ago, -ere, egi, actus:</b> conduct, spend (time)
<b>celsus, -a, -um:</b> high
<b>censura, -ae f.:</b> office of censor, censorship
<b>cogo, -ere, coegi, coactus:</b> force, compel
<b>compes, -edis f.:</b> chains ( <i>pl.</i> )
<b>discipulus, -i m.:</b> disciple, student
<b>fio, fieri, factus sum:</b> happen; take place
<b>focus, -i m.:</b> hearth
<b>gravis, -e:</b> heavy, serious
<b>hyems, hyemis (CL <i>hiems</i>) f.:</b> winter
<b>iniuria, -ae f.:</b> injustice, wrong
<b>instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus:</b> establish, found
<b>ius, iuris n.:</b> law; legal system
<b>magistratus, -us m.:</b> magistracy, civil office

---

<b>medius, -a, -um:</b> middle
<b>privatus, -i m.:</b> private citizen
<b>proficio, -ere, profeci, profectus:</b> accomplish; make progress
<b>quisquam, quidquam:</b> anyone, anything
<b>ratio, -onis f.:</b> an account, reasoning; rational argument
<b>reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus:</b> return; render
<b>revincio, -ire, revinxi, revinctus:</b> bind fast, fasten
<b>sine:</b> without (+ <i>abl.</i> )
<b>turris, -is f.:</b> tower
<b>unde (adv.):</b> from where, whence
<b>vero:</b> but, however
<b>vivo, -ere, vixi, victus:</b> live

**ut ... viverent:** purpose clause

**maiores ... minoribus:** compar. of *magnus* and *parvus*, used substantively, “the greater men with the lesser men”

**aequo iure:** abl. of manner, “under equal law (i.e. equally)”

**ne ... iniuria:** neg. purpose clause

**censura:** office in ancient Rome responsible for the census and the morals of public figures

**qua:** abl. of means

**et qui ... et qui:** antecedent is an assumed *ii*, subject of *cogebantur*

**rationem:** acc. obj. of *reddere*

**habiti magistratus et vitae ... actae:** coordinated genitives, dependent on *rationem*

**cum ... profecissem:** causal *cum* clause

**gravissimis:** agrees with *compedibus*

**media hyeme:** abl. of time when, “in the middle of winter”

ventis omnibus exposita cohcerceor mensibus quattuor: tandem vero Paulus, Francisci Gonzagae Cardinalis Mantuani precibus fatigatus, aegre pedibus stantem molestia carceris me liberat; admonet ne ab urbe discedam. “In Indiam,” inquit, “si proficiscere, inde te retrahet Paulus.” Feci mandata. Triennio in urbe commoratus sum, arbitratus hominem aliquam medelam meis incommodis interim allaturum.

**admoneo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** warn  
**aegre (adv.):** painfully, with difficulty  
**affero, afferre, attuli, allatus:** offer; produce  
**aliqui, -quae, -quod:** some  
**arbitror, -ari, -atus sum:** believe; judge  
**carcer, -eris m.:** prison  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**cohcerceo, -ere, -ui, -itus (CL coerceo):**  
 enclose, confine  
**commoror, -ari, -atus sum:** abide; remain  
**discedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessus:** depart  
**expono, -ere, -ui, -itus:** set out; expose  
**fatigatus, -a, -um:** weary  
**incommodum, -i n.:** misfortune  
**inde (adv.):** from there  
**India, -ae f.:** India  
**inquam, - , - , - :** say  
**interim (adv.):** meanwhile

**libero, -are, -avi, -atus:** free  
**mandatum, -i n.:** order  
**Mantuanus, -a, -um:** of Mantua  
**medela, -ae f.:** cure, remedy  
**mensis, -is m.:** month  
**molestia, -ae f.:** trouble, hardship  
**pes, pedis m.:** foot  
**prex, precis f.:** prayer, request  
**proficiscor, -ficiisci, -fectus sum:** depart, set  
 off  
**quattuor:** four  
**retraho, -ere, retraxi, retractus:** draw back,  
 bring back  
**sto, -are, steti, status:** stand  
**tandem (adv.):** finally  
**triennium, -i n.:** three years  
**ventus, -i m.:** wind  
**vero:** but, however

**exposita:** agrees with *turri*

**cohcerceor, liberat, admonet, retrahet:** historical pres.

**mensibus quattuor:** abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**Francisci ... Mantuani:** Francesco Gonzaga, Cardinal of Mantua, Platina's patron

**precibus:** abl. of means

**molestia:** abl. of separation with *liberat* or cause with *aegre pedibus stantem*

**ne ... discedam:** ind. command

**inquit:** subject is Paul (who refers to himself in third person)

**proficiscere:** = *proficisceris*, fut. indic. with alternate 2<sup>nd</sup> sing. ending ‘-re’

**Triennio:** abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**hominem ... allaturum (esse):** ind. statement

**meis incommodis:** dat. of reference

*Paul involves himself with the canons of the Lateran, provoking some ill will*

**19** Coronatus Paulus de more, memor a Calisto [371] quondam pulsos esse e Sancto Iohanne Laterano canonicos regulares, quos eodem in loco Eugenius pontifex ante collocaverat, eosdem revocavit, ut seorsum a canonicis saecularibus divina officia celebrarent. Praeterea vero canonicorum saecularium eo in loco nomen aboliturus, si quis moriebatur, in demortui locum neminem sufficiebat;

---

**aboleo, -ere, -evi, -itus:** abolish  
**canonicus, -i m.:** clergyman; canon  
**celebro, -are, -avi, -atus:** perform  
**colloco, -are, -avi, -atus:** place in position;  
    post  
**coronatus, -a, -um:** crowned  
**demorior, demori, demortuus sum:** decease,  
    die off  
**divinus, -a, -um:** divine  
**idem, eadem, idem:** the same  
**locum, -i n.:** place  
**locus, -i m.:** place; position  
**memor, -oris:** remembering; mindful  
**mos, moris m.:** custom

**nemo, neminis m./f.:** no one  
**officium, -i n.:** office  
**pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsus:** drive out; banish  
**pontifex, -ficus m.:** pontiff, pope  
**praeterea (adv.):** besides  
**quondam (adv.):** formerly  
**regularis, -e:** regular  
**revoco, -are, -avi, -atus:** call back; withdraw  
**saecularis, -e:** secular  
**seorsum (adv.):** separately  
**sufficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** put in place,  
    replace  
**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact

---

**de more:** “according to custom”

**Calisto:** Pope Callistus III (r. 1455-1458), who expelled the canons regular from the Basilica of St. John Lateran

**pulsos esse ... canonicos regulares:** ind. statement introduced by *memor*

**Sancto Iohanne Laterano:** St. John Lateran, one of the four major basilicas in Rome

**canonicos regulares:** “canons regular,” clerics who lived under a monastic rule (*regula*) and had renounced their property; antecedent of *quos*

**eodem in loco:** St. John Lateran

**Eugenius:** Pope Eugene IV (r. 1431-1447), maternal uncle of Paul II

**revocavit:** subject is *Paulus*

**ut ... celebrarent:** purpose clause

**canonicis saecularibus:** “canons secular,” clerics who had not renounced their property

**aboliturus:** Pope Paul is the subject of *aboliturus*

**quis:** *aliquis* (after *si*, *nisi*, *num* and *ne*, “ali” takes a holiday)

**in demortui locum:** “in the place of the deceased”

aut si quod {233r} beneficium vacabat, coactos se canonicatibus illis abdicare ad alias ecclesias transferebat ut tandem beneficia illa, in unum corpus redacta, canonicis regularibus satisfacerent sine ullo suo dispendio, cum eos tum pascere ob inopiam oporteret. Hanc autem ob rem Paulus multum a se alienavit civium animos, quod dicerent illa beneficia, a maioribus suis instituta, pulsis civibus, inquelinis dari. Neque hoc contentus Paulus, seorsum canonicos

**abdico, -are, -avi, -atus:** resign  
**alieno, -are, -avi, -atus:** alienate  
**animus, -i m.:** mind; feelings  
**beneficium, -i n.:** benefit; benefice, fiefdom  
     given by the pope  
**canonicatus, -us m.:** office of canon  
**canonicus, -i m.:** canon; clergyman  
**civis, -is m./f.:** citizen  
**cogo, -ere, coegi, coactus:** force, compel  
**contentus, -a, -um:** content, satisfied (+ abl.)  
**corpus, corporis n.:** body  
**dispendium, -i n.:** expense, loss  
**ecclesia, -ae f.:** church  
**inopia, -ae f.:** poverty  
**inquilinus, -i m.:** foreigner  
**instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** set up  
**maiores, maiorum m.:** ancestors (*pl.*)

**multum (adv.):** greatly  
**oportet, -ere, -uit, - (impers.):** it is necessary  
**asco, -ere, pavi, pastus:** feed; maintain,  
     support  
**pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsus:** drive out  
**redigo, -ere, redigi, redactus:** reduce  
**regularis, -e:** regular  
**satisfacio, -facere, -feci, -factus:** satisfy (+  
     dat.)  
**seorsum (adv.):** separately  
**sine:** without (+ abl.)  
**tandem (adv.):** eventually  
**transfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus:** transfer  
**ullus, -a, -um:** any  
**unus, -a, -um:** one  
**vaco, -are, -avi, -atus:** be vacant

**quod:** *aliquod* (after *si, nisi, num* and *ne*, “ali” takes a holiday)  
**se ... abdicare:** ind. statement introduced by *coactos*; *se* is the reflexive acc. obj. of *abdicare*, “having been compelled to resign (themselves)”  
**ut ... satisficerent:** purpose clause  
**cum ... oporteret:** causal *cum* clause  
**eos:** acc. obj. of *pascere*; it was necessary to feed them because they had given up their property  
**Hanc autem ob rem:** “but on account of this thing,” Paul’s preference for the canons regular  
**quod dicerent:** clause of alleged reason  
**beneficia ... dari:** ind. statement  
**a maioribus suis:** abl. of personal agent  
**instituta:** participle agreeing with *beneficia*  
**pulsis civibus:** abl. abs.

quosdam allocutus, eos minis etiam adhibitis abdicare se illis canonici-  
catibus impellebat. Nonnulli tamen eius minas contemnentes, tempus  
vindicandae libertatis expectabant, quod postea eo mortuo eluxit.

*Paul calls for a crusade against the Turks, but the various Christian powers are fighting amongst themselves*

**20** At vero cum nunciatum esset, Thurcos, capta iam fere tota Epiro, in Illyricum iter parare, oratores statim ad reges et principes

**abdico, -are, -avi, -atus:** resign  
**adhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** use, employ  
**alloquor, alloqui, allocutus sum:** speak to  
**canonicatus, -us m.:** office of canon  
**capiro, -ere, cepi, captus:** capture, seize  
**contemno, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptus:**  
 despise, disdain  
**eluceo, -ere, eluxi, - :** be manifest; happen  
**Epirus, -i f.:** Epirus  
**expecto, -are, -avi, -atus:** await, expect  
**fere (adv.):** almost  
**iam (adv.):** now, already  
**Illyricum, -i n.:** Illyricum  
**impello, -ere, impuli, impulsus:** persuade;  
 urge on  
**iter, itineris n.:** path; march

**libertas, -tatis f.:** freedom  
**mina, -arum f.:** threats  
**nonnullus, -a, -um:** some, several  
**nuncio, -are, -avi, -atus (CL nuntio):**  
 announce  
**orator, -oris m.:** speaker; ambassador  
**paro, -are, -avi, -atus:** prepare  
**postea (adv.):** afterwards  
**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader; prince  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** a certain one  
**statim (adv.):** immediately  
**tempus, -oris n.:** time; condition, right time  
**Thurcus, -a, -um:** Turkish  
**totus, -a, -um:** whole, all  
**vero:** but, however  
**vindico, -are, -avi, -atus:** vindicate; win back

**minis ... adhibitis:** abl. of means

**abdicare:** obj. inf. of *impellebat*; *eos* is the subject acc. of *abdicare* and *se* its obj.; “(he  
 was compelling them) to resign (themselves)”

**illis canonici-  
catibus:** abl. of separation

**vindicandae libertatis:** gerundive phrase, “of liberty to be won back (i.e. of winning  
 back liberty)”

**quod:** antecedent is *tempus*

**eo mortuo:** abl. abs.

**cum nunciatum esset:** circumstantial *cum* clause, impers. construction, “when it had  
 been announced”

**Thurcos:** substantive adj., “the Turks”

**capta ... tota Epiro:** Epirus, a state on the Adriatic Sea, today located between Greece  
 and Albania; note that it is fem. and agrees with *capta* and *tota*

**Illyricum:** Illyricum, a Roman province up the Adriatic shoreline from Epirus, today  
 located roughly in Croatia

**parare:** ind. statement introduced by *nunciatum esset*; subject acc. is *Thurcos* and obj.  
 is *iter*

misit, eos oratum, ut compositis rebus suis de bello Thurcis inferendo ad propulsandam iniuriam cogitarent. Qua de re nil certe actum est, cum inter sese gravissimis bellis decertarent: hinc Germani, hinc Angli, nunc veterem regem, interdum vero novum expetentes. Hinc Hispani, hinc Galli principes veriti regis potentiam, qui regio nomini

**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** do

**Anglicus, -a, -um:** English

**certe (adv.):** certainly

**cogito, -are, -avi, -atus:** think; consider

**compono, -ere, -posui, -positum:** bring together, put in order

**decerto, -are, -avi, -atus:** fight it out

**expeto, -ere, expeti, expetitus:** ask for; desire; seek after

**Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic, French

**Germanus, -a, -um:** German

**gravis, -e:** serious; grave

**hinc (adv.):** from here

**Hispanus, -a, -um:** Spanish

**infero, inferre, intuli, illatus:** bring in; inflict

**iniuria, -ae f.:** injustice, wrong, injury

**interdum (adv.):** sometimes

**nil n. (indecl.):** nothing

**novus, -a, -um:** new

**oro, -are, -avi, -atus:** advise; beseech, entreat

**potentia, -ae f.:** power

**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader; prince

**propulso, -are, -avi, -atus:** drive back

**regius, -a, -um:** royal

**vereor, -eri, -itus sum:** fear

**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact

**vetus, veteris:** old

**eos:** the *reges et principes*

**oratum:** acc. supine expressing purpose

**ut ... cogitarent:** ind. command

**de bello Thurcis inferendo:** *de* + abl. gerundive phrase, “about the war that must be waged on the Turks (i.e. about waging war on the Turks)”

**ad propulsandam iniuriam:** *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “for the purpose of injustice to be driven back (i.e. to drive back injustice)”

**Qua de re:** referring to the Turkish march north up the Adriatic

**cum ... decertarent:** causal *cum* clause

**gravissimis bellis:** abl. of means

**Germani ... Angli:** substantive adjs., “the Germans ... the English”

**Hispani ... Galli:** each agrees with *principes*

**veriti:** nom. pl. masc.

**regis:** the Spanish and French each feared the power of their own king; antecedent of

*qui*

omnes obtemperare volebat iactabatque se brevi facturum, ut eos poeniteret, qui secus fecissent.

*Paul is troubled by heresy in Bohemia, but is hindered from acting because of the Turkish situation and a succession crisis in Hungary*

**21** Praeterea vero Paulum urgebat regis Boemiae perfidia, qui se paulatim a toto corpore Christiani nominis subtrahebat. In hunc itaque mittere Ungariae [372] regem cum exercitu instituerat, si ei per bellum in Thurcos susceptum licuisset, sique rem inter regem

---

**Boemia, -ae f.**: Bohemia

**brevi (adv.)**: briefly; soon

**Christianus, -a, -um**: Christian

**corpus, corporis n.**: body

**exercitus, -us m.**: army

**iacto, -are, -avi, -atus**: throw out; boast

**instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus**: decide

**licet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.)**: it is  
permitted, allowed

**obtempero, -are, -avi, -atus**: obey (+ dat.)

**paulatim (adv.)**: little by little, gradually  
per: through; in the midst of (+ acc.)

**perfidia, -ae f.**: faithlessness; heresy

**poenitet, -ere, -uit, -** (CL *paenitet*): cause to  
regret; make sorry

**praeterea (adv.)**: in addition

**secus (adv.)**: otherwise

**subtraho, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus**: withdraw

**suscipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptus** (CL  
*suscepitus*): take up, begin

**Thurcus, -a, -um**: Turkish

**totus, -a, um**: whole, entire

**Ungaria, -ae f.**: Hungary

**urgeo, -ere, ursi, -** : vex, burden

**vero**: but, however

**volo, velle, volui, -** : wish, want

---

**obtemperare**: obj. inf. of *volebant*; subject acc. is *omnes*

**iactabatque ... fecissent**: “he was bragging that he would soon bring it about that  
they regret it, those who had done otherwise”

**se ... facturum**: ind. statement introduced by *iactabatque*

**ut eos poeniteret**: impers. verb, subjunctive in noun clause, obj. of *facturum*, “that it  
cause them to regret (i.e. that they regret it)”

**qui ... fecissent**: rel. clause of characteristic

**Boemiae**: a region in what is now the Czech Republic

**qui**: antecedent is *regis Boemiae*

**a toto corpore Christiani nominis**: “from the entire body of the Christian name (i.e.  
from the whole Christian Church)”

**In hunc**: “against this man (the King of Bohemia)”

**instituerat si ... licuisset ... potuissent**: past contrafactual cond.; apodosis can  
sometimes be indic. for vividness

**bellum ... susceptum**: “the war having been undertaken (i.e. the undertaking of  
war)”

et imperatorem componere potuisset. Nam mortuo Ladislao rege  
Ungariae eius nepote, qui herede carebat, imperator ipse regnum illud,  
quod Matthias Vaiovadae filius occupaverat, sibi deberi praedicabat.

*Paul mediates a feud between the Caffarelli and Albertini in Rome*

**22** Differendam itaque rem Paulus in aliud tempus censens,  
ad componendas quasdam simultates civium Romanorum inter se

---

**careo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** be without, lack (+  
    *abl.*)  
**censeo, -ere, censui, census:** judge; assess  
**civis, -is** *m./f.:* citizen  
**compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:** make  
    up; settle; put in order  
**deboeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** owe  
**difero, differre, distuli, dilatus:** postpone,  
    delay

---

**heres, heredis** (*CL heres*) *m./f.:* heir/heiress  
**imperator, -oris** *m.:* general; emperor  
**nepos, -otis** *m./f.:* nephew/niece  
**occupo, -are, -avi, -atus:** capture, occupy  
**praedico, -are, -avi, -atus:** proclaim, declare  
**regnum, -i** *n.:* kingdom  
**simultas, -tatis** *f.:* enmity  
**tempus, temporis** *n.:* time  
**Ungaria, -ae** *f.:* Hungary

---

**mortuo Ladislao rege ... nepote:** *abl. abs.*

**Ladislao:** Ladislaus V, King of Hungary, 1440-1457; he was involved in a prolonged  
    civil war, royal murders, and a power struggle that resulted in his poisoning in  
    Prague in 1457

**rege ... eius nepote:** *rege* and *nepote* agree with *Ladislao*; *eius* refers forward to the  
    *imperator*

**qui:** antecedent is *Ladislao*

**imperator:** Frederick III the Peaceful, Holy Roman Emperor, r. 1452-1493. After  
    Ladislaus' death, he claimed Hungary for himself

**regnum illud ... deberi:** *ind. statement introduced by praedicabat*

**quod:** antecedent is *regnum illud*

**Matthias Vaiovadae:** Matthias Corvinus (1443-1490), son of the Voivode (Slavic title  
    for a principal commander of military force); he was elected King of Hungary by  
    the Diet of Hungary in 1457-1458 to avoid civil war

**Differendam (esse) ... rem:** pass. periphrastic in *ind. statement*, “that the thing  
    ought to be delayed”

**ad componendas quasdam simultates:** *ad + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “in*  
    *order for certain enmities to be settled (i.e. to settle certain enmities)”*

dissidentium animum adiecit. Orta nanque rixa erat inter Iacobum Ioannis Alberini filium et Foelicem nepotem Antonii Capharelli: hanc ob rem accitis ad se patribus familias, eos aliquandiu renitentes, ad concordiam datis vadibus compulit. Verum non ita multo post Iacobus Alberini filius, nusquam latus in iuriam patri illatam, Antonium Capharellum interficere conatus, confossum

**accio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** send for, summon  
**adicio, -ere, adieci** (CL *adieci*), **adiectus:**

throw; apply one thing to another

**aliquandiu** (CL *aliquamdiu*) (*adv.*): for some time

**animus, -i m.:** mind

**compello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus:** force, compel

**concordia, -ae f.:** harmony, peace

**confodio, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus:** stab, wound

**conor, -ari, -atus sum:** attempt, try

**dissideo, -ere, discedi, - :** disagree

**familia, -ae f.:** household; family

**fero, ferre, tuli, latus:** endure, bear

**infero, inferre, intuli, illatus:** inflict

**iniuria, -ae f.:** injury; insult

**interficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** kill

**multo** (*adv.*): much; long (before/after)

**nanque** (CL *namque*): for indeed, for truly

**nepos, -otis m./f.:** nephew, niece

**nusquam** (*adv.*): on no occasion

**orior, -iri, ortus sum:** arise, emerge, crop up

**renitor, reniti, renitus sum:** struggle

**rixa, -ae f.:** violent quarrel, feud

**vas, vadis m.:** surety, (financial) guarantee

**verum:** but yet, however

**dissidentium:** pres. act. participle agreeing with *civium Romanorum*

**animum adiecit:** “he applied his mind (i.e. he turned his attention to)”

**rixa:** the feud arose out of a rivalry over the love “of a certain courtesan” (*cuiusdam meretricis*) according to Gaspar of Verona (*De Gestis Pauli II* p. 9 Zippel)

**Iacobum Ioannis Alberini filium:** Giacomo Alberini, son of the rich Roman merchant Giovanni Alberini

**Foelicem:** Felice Caffarelli, nephew of Antonio Caffarelli, a consistorial advocate

**patribus familias:** *familias* is an archaic gen., frozen in the form *pater familias*, “head of household”

**datis vadibus:** abl. of means; Paul asks for a surety, which would then be taken away if the violence were to continue

**Iacobus Alberini filius:** Giacomo, son of Giovanni Alberini

**latus:** fut. act. participle of *fero*

**iniuriam patri illatam:** his father Giovanni had just been attacked by Felice’s brother Lorenzo

**Antonium Capharellum:** Antonio Caffarelli

**confossum:** agrees with *Antonium Capharellum*

aliquot gravibus vulneribus, tanquam mortuum reliquit. Hanc ob rem indignatus Paulus, quod contra atque Alberinus iuraverat filius egisset, eversis eorum aedibus, redactisque in fiscum omnibus bonis, eos ab urbe exules demum facit. Hos tamen postea suo iussu ad urbem redeuntes in gratiam recepit, restitutis rebus omnibus, paceque inter dissidentes composita, cum tamen ambo aliquandiu in carcere stetissent.

<b>aedes, aedis</b> <i>f.</i> : shrine; ( <i>pl.</i> ) house
<b>ago, -ere, egī</b> ( <i>CL egī</i> ), <b>actus</b> : act
<b>aliquandiu</b> ( <i>CL aliquamdiu</i> ) ( <i>adv.</i> ): for some time
<b>aliquot</b> : a number (of); more than one
<b>ambo, -ae, -o</b> : both
<b>bona, -orum</b> <i>n.</i> : goods; possessions; wealth, estate
<b>carcer, -eris</b> <i>m.</i> : prison
<b>compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus</b> : make up; settle
<b>contra</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): against; contrarily
<b>demum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): finally
<b>dissideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus</b> : disagree
<b>evertō, -ere, everti, eversus</b> : destroy, ruin
<b>exul, -ulus</b> <i>m./f.</i> : exile
<b>fiscus, -i</b> <i>m.</i> : papal treasury

<b>gratia, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> : goodwill, friendship
<b>gravis, -e</b> : serious; grave
<b>indignor, -ari, -atus sum</b> : become angry; scorn
<b>iuro, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : swear; promise
<b>iussus, -us</b> <i>m.</i> : order, command
<b>postea</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): afterwards
<b>recipio, -ere, recipi</b> ( <i>CL recipi</i> ), <b>receptus</b> : take in; take back
<b>redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus</b> : return, go back
<b>redigo, -ere, redigi, redactus</b> : reduce; bring to
<b>relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictus</b> : leave behind
<b>restituо, -ere, -ui, -utus</b> : restore
<b>sto, -are, steti, statum</b> : stand; remain
<b>tanquam</b> ( <i>CL tamquam</i> ): just as, as if
<b>vulnus, -eris</b> <i>n.</i> : wound

**gravibus vulneribus**: abl. of means

**quod ... egisset**: clause of alleged reason

**contra atque**: “contrary to,” “otherwise than”

**Alberinus**: Giovanni Alberini, whose son broke the truce by attacking Antonio Caffarelli

**eversis ... aedibus, redactisque ... omnibus bonis**: abl. abs.

**exules**: predicate acc. of *eos*, “made them exiles”

**suo iussu**: “at his own command”

**in gratiam recepit**: idiom, “received back into his favor”

**restitutis rebus omnibus**: abl. abs.

**paceque ... composita**: abl. abs.

**cum ... stetissent**: circumstantial *cum* clause

**ambo**: nom. pl.

*Alovisius Patavinus dies, leaving his estate to two nephews*

**23** Anno vero MCCCCCLXV Alovisius Patavinus pontificis {233v} camerarius, et tituli Sancti Laurentii in Damaso presbyter cardinalis, vir quidem ditissimus, et in rebus agendis sagax, sed ultimo suae vitae tempore parum prudens; quippe qui ex testamento maxima ex parte heredes reliquerat duos fratres cognomento Scarampos, alioquin bonos et liberalis ingenii, sed nequaquam tantis fortunis et

---

**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** do; manage  
**alioquin (adv.):** otherwise  
**annus, -i m.:** year  
**camerarius, -i m.:** chamberlain  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**cognomentum, -i n.:** surname  
**dis, ditis:** rich, wealthy  
**duo, -ae, -o:** two  
**fortuna, -ae f.:** wealth, property  
**heres, heredis (CL *heres*) m./f.:** heir/heiress  
**ingenium, -i n.:** nature; natural disposition  
**liberalis, -e:** noble  
**nequaquam (adv.):** by no means

**pars, partis f.:** part; share  
**parum (adv.):** too little, not enough  
**prudens, -entis:** sensible, prudent  
**presbyter, presbyteri (CL *presbyter*) m.:** priest  
**quippe (adv.):** as you see; obviously  
**relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relicitus:** leave  
**sagax, sagacis:** wise; acute  
**tempus, -oris n.:** time  
**testamentum, -i n.:** will, testament  
**titulus, -i m.:** title; titular church  
**ultimus, -a, -um:** last, final  
**vero:** but, however

---

**Anno ... MCCCCCLXV:** abl. of time when (1465); this sentence lacks a main verb,  
presumably *mortuus est*

**Alovisius Patavinus:** Alovisius of Padua, also called Ludovico Treisan, was Paul's former rival (see ch. 4-7)

**pontificis camerarius:** Chamberlain, the cardinal in charge of the *Camera Apostolica*, which handled papal financial matters

**tituli ... cardinalis:** a cardinal priest was assigned to each "titular church" in Rome, named after their founders; the San Lorenzo in Damaso lies in central Rome

**in rebus agendis:** "in accomplishing things," a reference to his military successes

**ultimo ... tempore:** abl. of time when; a reference to his lack of sense in making his will  
**quippe qui:** "since he"

**maxima ex parte:** idiom, heirs "of the largest part"

**heredes:** pred. acc. with *duos fratres ... Scarampos*

**cognomento:** abl. of respect, "Scarampos in respect to their name"; Alovisius Patavinus was also from the Scarampi family

**liberalis ingenii:** gen. of description

**tantis fortunis et proventibus:** abls. with *dignos*

proventibus Ecclesiae partis dignos. (Quid homines suspicarentur scimus.)

*Paul voids the will of Alovisius Patavinus, redistributing his estate more fairly*

**24** Has autem facultates Paulus, ei licet testandi facultatem ultro permisisset, sibi vindicavit. Scarampos cepit, et [373] tam diu honesto tamen loco retinuit, quoad quae Florentiam delata fuerant ad se deferrentur. Fugientes Scarampi, dum hac de re ageretur, capti

**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** to do, handle  
**capiro, -ere, cepi** (CL *cepi*), **captus:** take, seize, arrest  
**defero, -ferre, -uli, -latus:** carry, bring  
**dignus, -a, -um:** worthy, deserving (+ *abl.*)  
**diu (adv.):** for a long time  
**Ecclesia, -ae f.:** the Church  
**facultas, -tatis f.:** opportunity; capability; resources (*pl.*)  
**Florentia, -ae f.:** Florence  
**fugio, -ere, fugi, fugitus:** flee  
**honestus, -a, -um:** respected, honorable  
**licet:** although (+ *subjunctive*)

**locus, -i m.:** place  
**pario, -ere, peperi, partus:** produce; acquire  
**permitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus:** permit, allow  
**proventus, -us m.:** income; success  
**quoad:** until (+ *subjunctive*)  
**retineo, -ere, retinui, retentus:** restrain; keep  
**scio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** know  
**suspicio, -ari, -atus sum:** suspect  
**tam (adv.):** so  
**testor, -ari, -atus sum:** make a will  
**ultra (adv.):** voluntarily  
**vindico, -are, -avi, -atus:** claim

**partis:** perf. pass. participle of *pario*, agreeing with *fortunis et proventibus*  
**quid ... suspicarentur:** ind. question; Platina is explaining that the previous sentence is not his own opinion

**ei:** referring to the deceased Alovisius Patavinus

**testandi:** gerund, “of making a will”

**permisisset:** Paul is subject

**sibi:** dat. of advantage

**cepit ... retinuit:** Paul is subject

**honesto ... loco:** abl. of place where

**quae:** antecedent is an assumed *ea*

**Florentiam:** acc. of place to which

**dum ... ageretur:** *dum* + imperf. subjunctive as “while” (see Introduction 7.C); impers. pass., “while there was a doing concerning this thing (i.e. while the matter was being handled)”

in carcerem coniiciuntur. Verum, cum bona patriarchae Florentia Romam delata fuissent, Scarampos cum bona parte incolumes dimittens, in reliquos patriarchae familiares maiore benignitate usus est quam ipse testator instituisset. Atque hoc modo bona hominis tanta diligentia parta, maiore retenta - cum magna opum iactatione

---

**benignitas, -tatis** *f.*: liberality, favor  
**bona, -orum** *n.*: goods, possessions; wealth (*pl.*)  
**carcer, -eris** *m.*: prison, jail  
**coniicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectus**: throw together; put  
**defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus**: bring; deliver  
**diligentia, -ae** *f.*: diligence; care  
**dimitto, -ere, dimisi, dimissus**: send away; release  
**familiaris, -is** *m./f.*: household member  
**Florentia, -ae** *f.*: Florence  
**iactatio, -onis** *f.*: boasting; showing off  
**incolumis, -e**: unharmed

---

**instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus**: set up, establish  
**modus, -i** *m.*: manner, way  
**ops, opis** *f.*: power; resources, wealth (*pl.*)  
**pario, -ere, peperi, partus**: produce; acquire  
**pars, partis** *f.*: part, share; portion  
**patriarcha, -ae** *m.*: patriarch  
**reliquus, -a, -um**: rest of, remaining  
**retineo, -ere, retinui, retentus**: retain  
**Roma, -ae** *f.*: Rome  
**testator, -oris** *m.*: testator; one who makes a will  
**utor, uti, usus sum**: use (+ *abl.*)  
**verum**: but yet, however

---

**cum ... delata fuissent**: circumstantial *cum* clause  
**bona patriarchae**: the goods of Alovisius Patavinus (Ludovico Treisan), which he had left to the Scarampi brothers  
**Florentia**: abl. of place from which  
**Romam**: acc. of place to which  
**Scarampos**: relatives of Alovisius Patavinus  
**bona parte**: abl. of accompaniment  
**patriarchae**: possessive gen. of *reliquos ... familiares*, still referring to Alovisius Patavinus  
**maiore**: compar. of *magnus*; abl. sing. f. with *benignitate*  
**quam**: compar., “than”  
**hoc modo**: abl. of manner  
**bona hominis**: referring to the estate or goods of Alovisius Patavinus  
**tanta diligentia**: abl. of means  
**parta ... retenta**: participles agreeing with *bona*  
**maiore**: compar. of *magnus*, abl. sing. f. with an implied *diligentia*, abl. of manner  
**cum magna ... iactatione**: abl. of manner

ac si annos Matusalem victurus esset - ab eo sunt partim possessa, partim destributa, quocum diutius simultatibus, odiis, maledicentia certaverat, cum maluisset ad Thurcos ipsos quam ad Paulum bona sua recidere. Sed neque hoc contenta Divina Providentia voluit quoque eius corpus iam sepultum in praedam dari. Ab ipsis enim,

**annus, -i** *m.*: year

**certo, -are, -avi, -atus**: dispute; fight

**contentus, -a, -um**: content, satisfied (+ *abl.*)

**corpus, corporis** *n.*: body; corpse

**destribuo, -ere, -ui, -utus** (*CL distribuo*):

distribute

**diu** (*adv.*): (for) a long time

**divinus, -a, -um**: divine

**iam** (*adv.*): now, already

**maledicentia, -ae** *f.*: slander

**malo, malle, malui, -** : want more, prefer

**odium, -i** *n.*: hatred

**partim** (*adv.*): partly

**possideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus**: seize; hold possession of

**praeda, -ae** *f.*: booty; prey

**providentia, -ae** *f.*: providence

**rerido, -ere, recidi, recasus**: go to; fall back, happen upon

**sepelio, -ire, sepelivi, sepultus**: bury, inter

**simultas, -tatis** *f.*: grudge; enmity

**Thurci, -orum** *m.*: the Turks

**vinco, -ere, vici, victus**: to conquer

**volo, velle, volui, -** : wish, want

**ac si ... victurus esset:** *ac si* “as if”; protasis of a pres. contrafactual cond. with an elided apodosis

**annos Matusalem:** here *vinco* takes a double acc., “beat Methuselah his years”  
(Methuselah was said to have lived to 969 years)

**ab eo:** referring to Paul

**possessa (sunt) ... destributa (sunt):** subject is *bona hominis*

**quocum:** abl. of accompaniment, “with whom,” antecedent is *eo*

**diutius:** compar. of *diu*

**simultatibus, odiis, maledicentia:** abls. of means

**certaverat ... maluisset:** Alovisius Patavinus is subject

**cum maluisset:** concessive *cum* clause

**ad Thurcos ipsos ... ad Paulam:** Platina says that Alovisius Patinavus would prefer that his wealth “go to the Turks themselves rather than to Paul”

**quam:** compar., “than”

**recidere:** obj. inf. of *maluisset*; *bona sua* is subject acc. of the inf.

**hoc:** abl. with *contenta*, neuter “thing” referring to Paul taking charge of Alovisius’ goods

**Divina Providentia:** nom.; “Divine Providence”

**corpus ... dari:** *dari* is obj. inf. of *voluit*, *corpus* is subject acc. of *dari*

**sepultum:** perf. pass. participle agreeing with *corpus*

**in praedam:** idiom, “for the sake of plunder”

**ipsis:** antecedent of *quibus*, refers to the canons of San Lorenzo in Damaso and a member of the cardinal’s household

quibus ipse beneficia Sancti Laurentii in Damaso dederat, noctu aperto sepulchro, annulo et vestibus spoliatus est. In hos autem Paulus, re cognita, graviter animadvertis.

*Paul generously hosts Frederick, son of King Ferdinand of Naples, and gives him a golden rose*

**25** Eodem fere tempore Foedericus adolescens egregius Ferdinandi filius, Mediolanum iturus ad ducendam Francisci Sfortiae

---

**adolescens, -entis** (CL *adulescens*) *m./f.*:

young adult

**animadverto, -vertere, -verti, -versus:** notice;

punish (with *in* + acc.)

**annulus, -i** *m.*: ring

**aperio, -ire, aperui, apertus:** uncover, open

**beneficium, -i** *n.*: benefit; benefice

**cognosco, -noscere, -novi, -nitus:** learn

**egregius, -a, -um** (CL *egregius*): distinguished

**fere** (*adv.*): about; nearly, generally

**graviter** (*adv.*): severely

**idem, eadem, idem:** the same

**Mediolanum, -i** *m.*: Milan

**noctu** (*adv.*): at night

**sepulchrum, -i** *n.*: grave, tomb

**spolio, -are, -avi, -atus:** rob; deprive (+ *abl.*)

**tempus, temporis** *n.*: time

**vestis, -is** *f.*: clothes

---

**beneficia:** “benefices,” the rights to income from an ecclesiastical property, in this case San Lorenzo

**Sancti Laurentii:** San Lorenzo in Damaso in central Rome

**aperto sepulchro:** abl. abs.

**re cognita:** abl. abs.

**Eodem ... tempore:** abl. of time when

**Foedericus:** Frederick IV of Naples (1452-1504), son of the Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494), from the House of Trastámara

**Ferdinandi:** Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494), son of Alfonso V of Aragon; he used support from the pope and from his allies in Milan to put down a rebellion led by the Orsini and the French John of Anjou in Naples from 1459-1465

**Mediolanum:** acc. of place to which

**iturus:** fut. act. participle, “about to go”

**ad ducendam ... filiam:** *ad* + acc. gerundive to express purpose, “in order for the daughter to be led (i.e. to lead the daughter)”

**Francisci Sfortiae:** Francesco I Sforza (1401-1466), a *condottiero* (mercenary leader) and the Duke of Milan, was a military and political power-broker who balanced a complicated web of allies and enemies from Genoa to Naples

filiam, fratri uxorem, in regnum, Romam veniens, prodeunte obviam honorato quoque et Rhodorico vicecancellario, perbenigne a Paulo suscipitur, ac Rosa donatur, quam pontifices quotannis donare alicui ex principibus Christianis consuevere.

---

**aliquis, aliquid:** someone, something  
**Christianus, -a, -um:** Christian  
**consuesco, -suescere, -suevi, -suetus:** be accustomed; tend  
**dono, -are, -avi, -atus:** give; present with (+ *abl.*)  
**honoratus, -a, -um:** honored; noble  
**obviam** (*adv.*): on the way to meet  
**perbenigne** (*adv.*): very kindly  
**pontifex, -ficiis m.:** pontiff, pope

**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader; prince  
**prodeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** go out  
**quotannis** (*adv.*): every year, yearly  
**regnum, -i n.:** kingdom (here Naples)  
**Roma, -ae f.:** Rome  
**rosa, -ae f.:** rose  
**suscipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptus:** receive  
**uxor, -oris f.:** wife  
**vicecancellarius, -i m.:** vice-chancellor

**filiam:** Ippolita Maria Sforza (1446-1484), first wife of Alfonso II, Duke of Calabria  
**fratris:** Alfonso II of Naples (1448-1495), Duke of Calabria in 1465; he was a patron of Renaissance arts

**uxorem:** in apposition with *filiam*

**in regnum:** Frederick's purpose for going to Milan is to fetch Francesco Sforza's daughter, his brother's wife, and take her to Naples ("the kingdom")

**Romam:** acc. of place to which

**honorato:** substantive adj., "the nobility"

**Rhodorico:** Rodrigo Borgia (1431-1503), later Pope Alexander VI (r. 1492-1503)

**vicecancellario:** the vice-chancellor was in charge of the chancery (*Cancellaria Apostolica*)

**a Paulo:** abl. of personal agent with *suscipitur*

**Rosa:** abl. with *donatur*, the Golden Rose, presented annually by the pope as a token of reverence from the Church

**quam:** rel. pronoun, antecedent is *Rosa*

**alicui:** dat. of ind. obj.

**consuevere:** alternative form of *consueverunt*

*Paul calls on Ferdinand, King of Naples, to help him fight the sons of Count Everso*

**26** Interim vero cum Ferdinando in animo esset, eos bello persequi, et potissimum in regno suo existentes, qui, dum a Gallis premeretur, a se defecerant, misissetque copias quasdam ea mente, ut ducem Soranum adoriretur, pontifex, divertere id bellum cupiens, archiepiscopum Mediolanensem eo propere misit oratum

**adorior, -iri, adortus sum:** attack

**animus, -i m.:** mind

**archiepiscopus, -i m.:** archbishop

**copia, -ae f.:** abundance; troops (*pl.*)

**cupio, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** wish

**deficio, -ere, defeci, defectus:** defect

**diverto, -ere, diverti, diversus:** divert; derail

**dux, ducis m.:** leader; duke

**eo (adv.):** there, to that place

**existo, -ere, existiti, existitus:** exist

**Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic

**interim (adv.):** meanwhile

**Mediolanensis, -e:** Milanese

**mens, mentis f.:** mind; intention

**oro, -are, -avi, -atum:** ask, beg

**persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum:** pursue;

attack; take vengeance on

**pontifex, -ficiis m.:** pontiff, pope

**potissimum (adv.):** especially

**premo, -ere, pressi, pressus:** pursue; harass

**propere (adv.):** quickly

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** certain, some

**regnum, -i n.:** kingdom (here “of Naples”)

**Soranus, -a , -um:** of Sora

**vero:** but, however

**cum ... esset ... misissetque:** causal *cum* clause

**Ferdinando in animo esset:** *Ferdinando* is dat. of the possessor, he “had it in mind”; King Ferdinand of Naples (1423-1494)

**eos ... existentes ... defecerant:** the town of Sora had abandoned Ferdinand when he had counted on it in his wars with John of Anjou and the French; he considered them traitors

**eos ... persequi:** ind. statement introduced by *in animo esset*

**bello:** abl. of means

**dum ... premeretur:** *dum* + imperf. subjunctive “while” (see Introduction 7.C)

**Gallis:** substantive adj., “by the French.” Ferdinand had to defend his kingdom from a claim from the French, led by John of Anjou from 1459-1464

**a se defecerant:** ind. refl., “they had defected from him(self)”

**ea mente:** abl. of manner, “with this intent”

**ut ... adoriretur:** noun clause in apposition to *ea mente*, “with this intent (namely) to attack the Duke of Sora”

**ducem Soranum:** Pier Paolo Guantelmo; the Duchy of Sora, located between Rome and Naples, was a fief to the Kingdom of Naples before 1463, when Pope Pius II made Sora a papal fief

**archiepiscopum Mediolanensem:** Stefano Nardini (d. 1484), a cardinal, also Archbishop of Milan; he served as *nuncio* to multiple popes

**oratum:** acc. supine expressing purpose

ut copias illas - quemadmodum ratione pheudi tenebatur - ad se mitteret, quod [374] diceret sibi in animo esse comitis Aversae filios, Ecclesie nequaquam obtemperantes, e medio tollere.

*The sons of Count Everso had long been defying the pope's authority*

**27** Nam eo fere tempore Aversae comes moritur, quo Paulus pontifex creatur; corpusque eius, Romam delatum, in Basilica Sanctae

**animus, -i** *m.*: mind  
**comes, comitis** *m.*: companion; count  
**copia, -ae** *f.*: abundance; (*pl.*) troops  
**corpus, -oris** *n.*: body  
**creo, -are, -avi, -atus**: create; elect  
**defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus**: brought down  
**Ecclesia, -ae** *f.*: the Church  
**fere** (*adv.*): about, nearly  
**medium, -i** *n.*: middle; midst  
**nequaquam** (*adv.*): by no means

**obtempero, -are, -avi, -atus**: obey (+ *dat.*)  
**pheudum, -i** (*or feudum*) *n.*: fief; feudal allegiance  
**quemadmodum** (*adv.*): in as much as  
**ratio, -onis** *f.*: reason; rule  
**Roma, -ae** *f.*: Rome  
**tempus, -oris** *n.*: time  
**teneo, -ere, tenui, tentus**: hold, keep  
**tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatus**: lift; take away

**ut ... mitteret**: ind. command; Ferdinand is subject of *tenebatur* and *mitteret*

**copias illas**: referring to the *copias quasdam* with which Ferdinand had intended to fight his betrayers

**ratione pheudi**: abl. of means, “by reason of his feudal allegiance”

**ad se**: ind. refl., “to him (the pope)”

**quod diceret**: clause of alleged reason; Paul is subject of *diceret*

**sibi in animo (id) esse**: ind. statement introduced by *diceret*; implied *id* refers to *tollere e medio*

**sibi**: dat. of possession

**comitis Aversae**: Count Everso degli Anguillara (d. 1464) was a feudal lord who owned great estates in northern Latium; he had disobeyed papal authority since the early 1450s in pursuit of various mercenary activities and backed a rebellion in 1460

**filios**: acc. obj. of *tollere*; Deifobo and Francesco, sons of Count Everso

**Ecclesie**: dat. sing. (CL *Ecclesiae*, see Introduction 6.B)

**e medio**: idiom, “from their midst”

**eo ... tempore**: abl. of time when, antecedent of *quo*; date is 1464

**Aversae comes**: Count Everso, whom Platina seemingly mistakenly calls “the Count of Aversa”

**Romam**: acc. of place to which

**delatum**: agrees with *corpus*

**Basilica Sanctae Mariae Maioris**: Basilica di Santa Maria Maggiore, one of the four major Basilicas in Rome

Mariae Maioris sepelitur. Rex itaque, acerrimus Deiphoebi hostis, quippe qui ab eo superiore bello insidiis, veneno, et armis petitus fuerat, copiarum suarum praefectis mandat ut primo quoque {234r} tempore proficiscantur, quo pontifex ire iusserit. Antea enim Deiphoebum et Franciscum ad se vocatos monuerat ut et iter tutum a latronibus servarent, ne Romam aliunde venientes in ipsis prope urbis Romae portis spoliarentur; utque Securanciae praefecti

---

<b>acer, acris, acre:</b> sharp, vehement	<b>primus, -a, -um:</b> first
<b>aliunde (adv.):</b> from elsewhere	<b>proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum:</b>
<b>antea (adv.):</b> before	depart, set out
<b>arma, -orum n.:</b> arms	<b>prope (adv.):</b> near; close by
<b>copia, -ae f.:</b> abundance; troops ( <i>pl.</i> )	<b>quippe:</b> of course, naturally
<b>hostis, -is m./f.:</b> enemy	<b>quisque, quaeque, quodque:</b> each
<b>insidiae, -arum f.:</b> plot; treachery; ambush	<b>quo (adv.):</b> to where
<b>iter, itineris n.:</b> road	<b>Roma, -ae f.:</b> Rome
<b>iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussus:</b> order	<b>sepelio (CL <i>sepelio</i>), -ire, sepelivi, sepultum:</b>
<b>latro, -onis m.:</b> thief	bury
<b>mando, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> commission; order, command	<b>servo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> guard, preserve
<b>moneo, -ere, -ui, -itus:</b> warn, advise	<b>spolio, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> rob
<b>peto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:</b> attack	<b>superus, -a, -um:</b> above; previous
<b>pontifex, -ficiis m.:</b> pontiff, pope	<b>tempus, temporis n.:</b> time; opportunity
<b>porta, -ae f.:</b> door, gate	<b>tutus, -a, -um:</b> safe
<b>praefectus, -i m.:</b> commander; prefect	<b>venenum, -i n.:</b> poison
	<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> call; summon

---

**Rex:** King Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494)

**Deiphoebi:** Deifobo, son of Count Everso

**quippe qui:** “since he”

**ab eo:** referring to Deifobo

**superiore bello:** abl. of time within which, “during the previous war”

**petitus fuerat:** pluperf. pass. (CL *petitus erat*, see Introduction 7.D)

**ut ... proficiscantur:** ind. command

**primo quoque tempore:** abl. of time when, “at each (of their) first opportunity”

**Deiphoebum et Franciscum:** sons of Count Everso

**vocatos:** agreeing with *Deiphoebum et Franciscum*

**ut ... servarent:** ind. command

**latronibus:** abl. of separation

**ne ... spoliarentur:** neg. purpose clause

**Romam:** acc. of place to which

**utque ... redderent:** ind. command, dependent on *monuerat*; *ut + que* coordinates with the *et* above

Vici quondam filio Caprarolam, quod oppidum est, redderent, cum omnia fere ipsius praefecti bona possiderent. Utrunque vero non modo facere recusarunt, verum etiam minas addidere, iactantes saepius se comitis Aversae filios esse, nec lacessentibus parcituros.

*The sons of Count Everso are defeated; one escapes but the other is captured*

**28** Tum vero Paulus clanculum paratis rebus omnibus ad bellum necessariis, supervenientibus etiam regiis copiis, quintodecimo die

**addo, -ere, addidi, additus:** add  
**bona, -orum n.:** goods, possessions; wealth (*pl.*)  
**Caprarola, -ae f.:** Caprarola, a town in Lazio, north of Rome  
**clanculum:** (*adv.*) secretly  
**comes, comitis m.:** companion; Count  
**copia, -ae f.:** abundance; troops (*pl.*)  
**dies, diei m.f.:** day  
**fere** (*adv.*): nearly  
**iacto, -are, -avi, -atus:** boast  
**lacesto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** provoke  
**mina, -arum f.:** threats  
**modo** (*adv.*): only  
**necessarius, -a, -um:** necessary  
**oppidum, -i n.:** town  
**parco, -ere, pepercii, parcitus** (CL *parsum*): spare, forgive (+ *dat.*)

**paro, -are, -avi, -atus:** prepare  
**possideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus:** possess, occupy  
**praefectus, -i m.:** commander; prefect  
**quintodecimus, -a, -um:** fifteenth  
**quondam** (*adv.*): formerly, one time  
**recuso, -are, -avi, -atus:** refuse  
**reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus:** return; restore  
**regius, -a, -um:** royal  
**supervenio, -venire, -veni, -ventus:** come upon, arrive  
**uterque, utraque, utrunque** (CL *utrumque*): each of two, both  
**vero:** but, however  
**verum:** but  
**Vicus, -i m.:** Vico Equense, a town just south of Naples

**Securanciae praefecti Vici ... filio:** “Securanza the son of the former (*quondam*) prefect of Vico Equense”

**quod:** Caprarola is antecedent, *quod* is neuter “which (thing)”

**cum ... possiderent:** causal *cum* clause; the fiefs at Caprarola, a site north of Rome, belonged to the Prefect of Vico’s fiefdom and had been taken by Deifobo and Francesco

**Utrunque:** “either thing”; namely, keeping the road safe and returning Caprarola

**recusarunt:** syncopated from *recusa(ve)runt*

**addidere:** alt. form of *addiderunt*

**saepius:** compar. of *saepe*

**se ... esse ... parcituros:** ind. statement introduced by *iactantes*

**paratis rebus omnibus ... necessariis:** abl. abs.

**ad bellum:** “for war,” in CL dat. *bello* (see Introduction 7.B)

**supervenientibus ... regiis copiis:** abl. abs.; *regiis* here, “belonging to the Kingdom of Naples”

**quintodecimo die:** abl. of time when

posteaquam incohatum est, bello eos incautos et nil tale opinantes oppressit, redactis in potestatem Ecclesiae novem castellis: quorum de numero aliqua ita munita natura et arte erant, ut vix opera hominum expugnari posse crederentur. Deiphoebus autem veritus ne captus ad regem mitteretur, salutem sibi fuga quaesivit. Capitur autem Franciscus frater cum filio, et quinquennio in arce Hadriani retentus, demum creato Sixto liberatur.

---

**aliquis, -qua, -quod:** some

**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft

**arx, arcis f.:** citadel

**capiro, -ere, cepi, captus:** seize; capture

**castellum, -i n.:** castle

**creo, -are, -avi, -atus:** create; elect

**demum (adv.):** finally

**Ecclesia, -ae f.:** the Church

**expugno, -are, -avi, -atus:** assault; conquer

**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, escape

**incautus, -a, -um:** incautious (+ dat.)

**inchoo, -are, -avi, -atus:** begin

**libero, -are, -avi, -atus:** free; release

**munio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** fortify

**ninem (indecl.):** nine

**numerus, -i m.:** number

**opera, -ae f.:** work

**opinor, -ari, -atus sum:** imagine, expect

**oprimo, -ere, oppressi, oppressus:** crush, overwhelm; take by surprise

**posteaquam (conj.):** after

**potestas, -tatis f.:** power, rule

**quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus:** seek

**quinquennium, -i n.:** period of five years

**redigo, -ere, redigi, redactus:** drive back; reduce

**retineo, -ere, retinui, retentus:** keep; detain

**salus, -utis f.:** health; safety

**talis, -e:** such; of that sort

**vereor, -eri, -itus sum:** respect; fear

**vix (adv.):** hardly

---

**incohatum est:** *bellum* is implied subject

**bello:** dat. with *incautos*; or perhaps abl. of means

**eos:** Count Everso's sons, Deifobo and Francesco

**redactis ... castellis:** abl. abs.; antecedent to *quorum*

**natura et arte:** abl. of means

**ut ... crederentur:** result clause

**opera:** abl. of means

**hominum:** subjective gen.

**ne ... mitteretur:** fear clause, “that having been captured, he *would* be sent”

**fuga:** abl. of means

**quinquennio:** abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**arce Hadriani:** the mausoleum of Emperor Hadrian (r. 117-138 AD), converted to a papal citadel and now called Castel Sant'Angelo, see fig. 4 (p. 83)

**creato Sixto:** abl. abs., “when Sixtus was elected.” Pope Sixtus IV (1414-1484)

succeeded Paul in 1471. He created the Vatican Library, made Platina the director, and was the dedicatee of Platina's *Lives of the Popes*

*A dispute over tribute arises between Paul and King Ferdinand of Naples*

**29** Hinc postea inter Paulum et regem [375] ipsum ortae graves inimicitiae sunt, cum Ferdinandus hoc tanto merito peteret superiorum annorum tributum, quod Ecclesiae pendebat, sibi relaxari et, quod deinceps soluturus esset, diminui, cum regnum Siciliae patruus suus possideret, cuius ipse una cum regno Neapolitano vectigal penderet. Inspicienda dicens et sua merita et considerandum quid

**annus, -i m.**: year  
**considero, -are, -avi, -atus**: consider  
**deinceps (adv.)**: thereafter  
**diminuo, -ere, -ui, -utus**: diminish  
**Ecclesia, -ae f.**: the Church  
**gravis, -e**: heavy; serious  
**hinc (adv.)**: from here  
**inimicitia, -ae f.**: enmity, hostility  
**inspicio, -ere, inspexi, inspectus**: examine, consider  
**meritum, -i n.**: merit, service  
**Neapolitanus, -a, -um**: Neapolitan; of Naples  
**orior, -iri, ortus sum**: arise  
**patruus, -i m.**: (paternal) uncle

**pendo, -ere, pependi, pensus**: weigh out; pay  
**peto, -ere, -ivi, -itus**: ask (for)  
**possideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus**: seize; possess  
**postea (adv.)**: afterwards  
**regnum, -i n.**: kingdom  
**relaxo, -are, -avi, -atus**: lighten, alleviate  
**Sicilia, -ae f.**: Sicily  
**solvo, -ere, solvi, solutus**: loosen; pay off  
**superior, -is**: previous  
**tributum, -i n.**: tax, tribute  
**una (adv.)**: together  
**vectigal, -alis n.**: tax, tribute

**cum ... peteret**: causal *cum* clause

**Ferdinandus**: Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494)

**hoc tanto merito**: abl. of cause, the *merito* refers to his aid against the sons of Count Everso (ch. 26-28)

**tributum ... relaxari et ... diminui**: ind. statement introduced by *peteret*

**quod ... pendebat**: antecedent is *tributum*

**quod ... soluturus esset**: subjunctive because the rel. clause is within ind. statement

**cum ... possideret**: causal *cum* clause

**cuius**: antecedent is *regnum Siciliae*

**Inspicienda (esse) ... sua merita**: pass. periphrastic in ind. statement, “that his own services must be considered”

**considerandum (esse)**: pass. periphrastic in ind. statement, “and that it must be considered”

**quid posset ... accidere**: ind. question, “what could happen on the contrary” with *considerandum*

posset in contrarium accidere, cum diceret se continuo acies quas-dam in armis habere, non magis sua quam pontificis Romani gratia, ut in bello contra Aversanos paulo ante noverat. Commemorabat vicissim Paulus merita Ecclesiae erga Ferdinandum; atque hoc modo altercationibus in longum res ipsa semper protracta est, cum uterque repetendi ius suum tempus quaereret.

---

**accido, -ere, accidi, - :** happen, occur  
**acies, aciei f:** edge, battle line  
**altercatio, -onis f:** contention, debate  
**arma, -orum n.:** arms  
**commemoro, -are, -avi, -atus:** recall, relate  
**continuo (adv.):** immediately, continuously  
**contra:** against (+ acc.)  
**contrarium, -i n.:** opposite  
**Ecclesia, -ae f:** the Church  
**erga:** towards (+ acc.)  
**ius, iuris n.:** right  
**longus, -a, -um:** long  
**magis (adv.):** to greater extent, more  
**meritum, -i n.:** merit, service

---

**modus, -i m.:** manner, way  
**nosco, -ere, novi, notus:** learn, find out  
**paulo (adv.):** by a little  
**pontifex, -ficus m.:** pontiff, pope  
**protraho, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus:** drag forward, prolong  
**quaero, -ere, quaeſivi, quaeſitus:** search for, seek  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** certain  
**repeto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** regain, get back  
**tempus, -oris n.:** time; opportunity, chance  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each (of two)  
**vicissim (adv.):** in turn

**cum diceret:** causal *cum* clause

**se ... habere:** ind. statement

**non magis sua quam pontificis Romani gratia:** *gratia* goes first with *sua*, then the gen., “not more for his own sake than that of the Roman pontiff”

**ut ... noverat:** “as he had found out”

**Aversanos:** referring to Deifobo and Francesco Everso, sons of Count Everso

**hoc modo:** abl. of manner, “in this way”

**altercationibus:** abl. of cause

**in longum:** substantive adj., “for a long time”

**cum ... quaereret:** causal *cum* clause

**repetendi:** gen. gerund; dependent on *tempus*, acc. obj. is *ius suum*, “the opportunity of regaining his own right”

*King Ferdinand invites Jacopo Piccinino to Naples, where he is jailed and murdered*

**30** Moliri res novas rex interim cavebat Iacobi Picennini, qui Sulmonem in Marsis et alia opida tenebat, potentiam veritus; quem postea Franciscus Sfortia sacer ad regem misit data fide se quotiens libuisset incolumem redditum. Verum aliter Iacobo quam putarat accidit. Captus enim Neapoli a Ferdinando cum filio, et in carcerem coniectus, non ita multo post vita privatur, figmento adhibito quod

**accido, -ere, accidi, -** : happen, occur

**adhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** use, employ

**aliter (adv.):** otherwise, differently

**capio, -ere, cepi, captus:** take hold, capture

**carcer, -eris m.:** prison

**caveo, -ere, cavi, cautus:** take care (against),  
avoid

**conicio, -ere, conieci, coniectus (CL  
coniectus):** throw

**fides, fidei f.:** faith; a pledge of protection

**figmentum, -i n.:** fiction

**incolumis, -e:** unharmed, safe

**interim (adv.):** meanwhile

**libet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.):** it pleases

**Marsus, -a, -um:** related to the Marsi, an  
ancient people in central Italy; here with  
an assumed *fnibus* ("territory")

**molior, -iri, -itus sum:** undertake

**multo (adv.):** much, by much

**Neapolis, -is f.:** Naples

**novus, -a, -um:** new

**opidum, -i (CL oppidum) n.:** town

**postea (adv.):** afterwards

**potentia, -ae f.:** power

**privō, -are, -avi, -atus:** deprive, rob

**quotiens (adv.):** as often as

**redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** return

**sacer, socii m.:** father-in-law

**Sulmo, -onis f.:** Sulmona, a town in Italy

**teneo, -ere, tenui, tentus:** hold, possess

**vereor, -eri, -itus sum:** fear, dread

**verum (adv.):** however

**Moliri:** obj. inf. of *cavebat*

**res novas:** idiom, "a new political situation," acc. obj. of *Moliri*

**Iacobi Picennini:** possessive gen. with *potentiam*. Jacopo Piccinino was an Italian noble and *condottiero*, son of Niccolò Piccinino. He supported the French John of Anjou in the wars for Naples from 1459-1464 from his territory in Abruzzo

**qui ... tenebat:** rel. clause, antecedent is *Iacobi Picennini*

**veritus:** agrees with *rex*

**Franciscus Sfortia:** Francesco Sforza, Duke of Milan. Francesco was the founder of the Sforza dynasty in Milan and its surrounding territories. After spending most of the 1440s and 1450s fighting Niccolò Piccinino and his son Jacopo, Sforza married his daughter Drusiana to Jacopo and made an alliance

**se ... redditum (esse):** ind. statement introduced by *data fide*

**aliter ... quam:** "differently than"

**putarat:** syncopated from *puta(ve)rat*

**Neapoli:** locative

**multo:** abl. of degree of difference

**vita:** abl. of separation

**figmento adhibito:** abl. abs. with concessive sense

**quod ... fregisset:** clause of alleged reason

in carcere ipso decidens crus fregisset, dum redeuntes ab Ischia (quam Aenariam antiqui vocabant) triremes regis de Gallis victrices studiosius quam cautius per fenestram inspicit.

*Some believed the pope privy to the murder, but the idea is rejected since the pope had much to gain from Piccinino*

**31** Sunt qui arbitrantur hominem adhuc vivere; quod ego nullo modo credo, cum nullus esset in Italia aptior, si auctoritatem hominis in militia respicis, ad evertendum Ferdinandi regis imperium.

---

<b>adhuc</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): still	<b>imperium, -i n.</b> : command, rule
<b>Aenaria, -ae f.</b> : Aenaria, ancient name for Ischia	<b>inspicio, -ere, inspici, inspectus</b> : examine, look at
<b>antiquus, -a, um</b> : ancient; ( <i>substantively in pl.</i> ) the ancients	<b>Ischia, -ae f.</b> : an island in the gulf of Naples
<b>aptus, -a, -um</b> : suitable, proper	<b>Italia, -ae f.</b> : Italy
<b>arbitror, -ari, -atus sum</b> : believe, think	<b>militia, -ae f.</b> : army
<b>auctoritas, -tatis f.</b> : power; reputation	<b>modus, -i m.</b> : manner, way
<b>carcer, -eris m.</b> : prison, jail	<b>nullus, -a, -um</b> : not any, no one
<b>caute</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): cautiously	<b>per</b> : through (+ <i>acc.</i> )
<b>crus, cruris n.</b> : leg	<b>redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus</b> : return, go back
<b>decido, -ere, decidi, - :</b> fall	<b>respicio, -ere, respexi, respectus</b> : consider
<b>evertor, -ere, everti, eversus</b> : overturn, overthrow	<b>studiosus</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): eagerly
<b>fenestra, -ae f.</b> : window	<b>triremis, -is f.</b> : trireme, ship
<b>frango, -ere, fregi, fractus</b> : break, shatter	<b>victrix, victricis</b> : victorious
<b>Gallus, -a, -um</b> : Gallic, French	<b>vivo, -ere, vixi, victus</b> : be alive, live
	<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : call

---

**de Gallis**: “victorious over the Gauls”

**victrices**: agrees with *triremes*; the Neapolitan navy was returning from an engagement off Ischia, where they destroyed the fleet of John of Anjou with the help of the Aragonese navy

**studiosus ... cautius**: compar. adverbs

**quam**: compar., “than”

**hominem ... vivere**: ind. statement; on the use of *homo* see Introduction 7.E

**quod ... credo**: antecedent is previous clause, “a thing which I ... ”

**nullo modo**: abl. of manner, “in no way”

**cum ... esset**: causal *cum* clause

**aptior**: compar. of *aptus*; construe closely with *ad evertendum*

**ad evertendum imperium**: *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “in order for the power to be overthrown (i.e. to overthrow the power)”

**Ferdinandi**: King Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494)

Substiterat in via hac re cognita, Senis nanque erat, ducis Mediolani filia {234v} Neapolim ad maritum itura, ut fidem faceret nulla patris sui [376] culpa Ferdinandum in Iacobi Picennini necem conspirasse. Quid autem ea de re suspicati sint homines, optime novimus. Fuere etiam qui dicerent id prius a Paulo pontifice scitum fore, cum illis

**cognosco, -noscere, -novi, -nitus:** know,  
learn  
**conspiro, -are, -avi, -atus:** plot, conspire  
**culpa, -ae f.:** fault  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader, duke  
**fides, fidei f.:** faith  
**maritus, -i m.:** husband  
**Mediolanum, -i n.:** Milan  
**nanque (CL *namque*):** for in fact  
**Neapolis, -is f.:** Naples  
**nex, necis f.:** death; murder

**nosco, -ere, novi, notus:** learn  
**nullus, -a, -um:** nobody, nothing  
**optime (superl. adv.):** best, very well  
**pontifex, -ficiis: m.:** pontiff, pope  
**prius (adv.):** earlier  
**scio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** know  
**Senae, -arum f.:** Siena, a town in Tuscany  
**subsisto, -ere, substiti, -i:** halt, stop  
**suspicor, -ari, -atus sum:** suspect, suppose  
**via, -ae f.:** road, journey

**Substiterat:** subject is *filia*

**hac re cognita:** abl. abs.

**Senis:** locative

**ducis Mediolani filia:** Drusiana, daughter of Francesco Sforza, Duke of Milan, and wife of Jacopo Piccinino

**Neapolim:** acc. of place to which

**itura:** fut. act. participle of *eo*, fem. sing.

**ut fidem faceret:** purpose clause; *fidem facere* is an idiom, “to assure”

**nulla ... culpa:** abl. of means

**Ferdinandum ... conspirasse:** ind. statement introduced by *faceret*

**Iacobi Picennini:** Jacopo Piccinino, mercenary and ruler of Abruzzo by the time of his murder

**conspirasse:** syncopated from *conspira(vi)sse*

**Quid ... suspicati sint homines:** ind. question, “what men suspected”

**novimus:** *nosco* in perf. is “learned,” therefore “now know”

**Fuere:** alternative form of *fuerunt*

**qui dicerent:** rel. clause of characteristic

**id ... scitum fore:** ind. statement, “that it would have been known,” in the manuscripts, Platina had originally written “that this too was accomplished through Pope Paul’s crafts” (*id quoque Pauli Pontificis artibus factum esse*)

**cum ... comaeaverit:** causal *cum* clause

**illis diebus:** abl. of time within which

diebus archiepiscopus Mediolanensis a pontifice ad regem et a rege ad pontificem frequenter commeaverit, cunque Paulus ipse dixerit, audita hominis captivitate, appellationum iudicem e medio sublatum esse. Sed verum est illud Virgilianum: “Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futurae.” Nullius enim magis quam Iacobi Picennini opera reprimere Ferdinandi contumaciam Paulus potuisset, si tum in vita

---

<b>appellatio, -onis</b> <i>f.</i> : appeal (to higher authority)	
<b>archiepiscopus, -i</b> <i>m.</i> : archbishop	
<b>audio, -ire, -ivi, -itus</b> : hear, listen	
<b>captivitas, -tatis</b> <i>f.</i> : captivity	
<b>commeo, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : go (to), travel,	
<b>contumacia, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> : obstinacy	
<b>cunque</b> (CL <i>cumque</i> ) ( <i>adv.</i> ): and since ( <i>cum + que</i> )	
<b>dies, diei</b> <i>m./f.</i> : day	
<b>fatum, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : fate, destiny	
<b>frequenter</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): often, frequently	
<b>futurus, -a, -um</b> : future	
<b>iudex, iudicis</b> <i>m.</i> : judge	

<b>magis</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): more	
<b>Mediolanensis, -e</b> : Milanese, of Milan	
<b>medius, -a, -um</b> : middle, midst	
<b>mens, mentis</b> <i>f.</i> : mind	
<b>nescius, -a, -um</b> : unaware, ignorant	
<b>nullus, -a, -um</b> : no one; none	
<b>opera, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> : work, aid, service	
<b>reproto, -ere, repressi, repressus</b> : repress, check	
<b>sors, sortis</b> <i>f.</i> : lot, fate	
<b>tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatus</b> : remove	
<b>verus, -a, -um</b> : true	
<b>Virgilianus, -a, -um</b> : Virgilian, of Virgil	

**archiepiscopus Mediolanensis**: Stefano Nardini, Archbishop of Milan. Paul II had made Nardini Papal Nuncio to the Kingdom of Naples, and so some suspected him of informing the pope of the plot on Jacopo's life

**cunque ... dixerit**: causal *cum* clause

**audita ... captivitate**: abl. abs.

**iudicem ... sublatum esse**: ind. statement introduced by *dixerit*

**e medio**: idiom, “from their midst”

**illud Virgilianum**: “that (saying) of Virgil”

**Nescia ... futrae**: Virgil *Aeneid* 10.501; the poet laments the limited knowledge of men, as Turnus boasts over the body of Pallas

**Nullius**: gen. of *nullus*, parallel to *Iacobi Picennini*

**magis quam**: “more than”

**opera**: abl. of means

**potuisset, si ... fuisset**: past contrafactual cond., “he would have been able ... if he had been ...”

fuisset quando inter eos de solvendo tributo contentio est orta ac bellum prope certum.

*Paul and Ferdinand settle their differences*

**32** Nam celebratis nurus ac filii nuptiis hac una re et Iacobi morte stabilito regno, Ferdinandus cum pontifice instat ut et tributum ei diminuatur et quaedam oppida, quae de regno possidebat Ecclesia, ei redderentur. Misit eo Paulus Bartholomeum Roverellam

**celebro, -are, -avi, -atus:** celebrate, proclaim  
**certus, -a, -um:** certain, sure  
**contentio, -onis f.:** tension, controversy  
**diminuo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** lessen, diminish  
**Ecclesia, -ae f.:** the Church  
**insto, -are, institi, - :** threaten, press hard  
**mors, mortis f.:** death  
**nuptiae, -arum f.:** marriage  
**nurus, -us f.:** daughter-in-law  
**oppidum, -i n.:** town  
**orior, -iri, ortus sum:** arise, emerge

**pontifex, -ficus m.:** pontiff, pope  
**possideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus:** possess, take possession of  
**prope (adv.):** nearly  
**quando (adv.):** when  
**reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus:** return, restore  
**regnum, -i n.:** royal power, kingdom  
**sollo, -ere, solvi, solitus:** loosen, pay off  
**stabilio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** make firm, establish  
**tributum, -i n.:** tax, tribute

**de solvendo tributo:** gerundive phrase, “about the tribute to be paid off (i.e. about paying off the tribute)”

**contentio:** nom., subject of *est orta*

**bellum (erat) prope certum:** verb elided

**celebratis ... nuptiis:** abl. abs.

**nurus ... filii:** *nurus* (gen. sing.) is Ippolita Maria Sforza, daughter of Francesco Sforza of Milan; *fili* is Alfonso II, son of Ferdinand of Naples. The marriage allied the two powers and secured the Kingdom of Naples’ strength and safety

**hac una re et ... morte:** ablatives of means

**Iacobi:** Jacopo Piccinino, *condottiero*

**stabilito regno:** abl. abs.

**Ferdinandus:** King Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494)

**cum ... instat:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**ut ... diminuatur ... redderentur:** ind. command dependent on *instat*

**ei (twice):** dat. of reference referring to Ferdinand

**eo:** dat. of reference referring to Ferdinand

**Bartholomeum Roverellam:** Bartolomeo Roverella (1406-1476), papal legate to the Kingdom of Naples for Popes Pius II and Paul II

legatum, tituli Sancti Clementis presbyterum cardinalem, qui regis mentem aliqua ex parte lenivit.

*Francesco Sforza dies; he was Duke of Milan, and had taken possession of Genoa*

**33** Verebatur tum, credo, uterque ne solis ac lunae ecchlipses, quae tunc fuere cum maxima hominum admiratione, regnorum mutationem portenderent. Moritur tamen (ne corpora caelestia frusta pati existimes) sequenti anno Franciscus Sfortia Insubriae et Lyguria dux. Nam Genuae dominatum biennio ante adeptus

---

<b>adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum:</b> gain, overtake	
<b>admiratio, -onis f.:</b> astonishment	
<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod:</b> some	
<b>annus, -i m.:</b> year	
<b>biennium, -i n.:</b> two years	
<b>caelestis, -e:</b> heavenly, celestial	
<b>cardinalis, -is m.:</b> cardinal	
<b>corpus, -oris n.:</b> body	
<b>dominatus, -us m.:</b> rule	
<b>dux, ducis m.:</b> leader, duke	
<b>ecchlipsis, -is (CL <i>eclipsis</i>) f.:</b> eclipse	
<b>existimo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> think, suppose	
<b>frustra (adv.):</b> in vain	
<b>Genua, -ae f.:</b> Genoa	
<b>Insubria, -ae f.:</b> Insubria, the region surrounding Milan	
<b>legatus, -i m.:</b> envoy, ambassador	

---

<b>lenio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:</b> calm, placate, appease	
<b>luna, -ae f.:</b> moon	
<b>Lyguria, -ae f.:</b> Liguria, the region surrounding Genoa	
<b>mens, mentis f.:</b> mind	
<b>mutatio, -onis f.:</b> change	
<b>pars, partis f.:</b> part; portion	
<b>patior, pati, passus sum:</b> suffer, submit	
<b>portendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus:</b> predict, foretell	
<b>presbyter, -i m.:</b> priest	
<b>regnum, -i n.:</b> kingdom; royal power	
<b>sanctus, -i m.:</b> saint	
<b>sequens, -entis:</b> following, next	
<b>sol, solis m.:</b> sun	
<b>titulus, -i m.:</b> title; here “titular church”	
<b>uterque, utraque, utrumque:</b> each (of two)	
<b>vereor, -eri, -itus sum:</b> fear, dread	

**legatum:** appositive, “as an envoy”

**Sancti Clementis:** San Clemente, a titular church

**presbyterum cardinalem:** a rank of cardinal

**aliqua ex parte:** idiom, “to some degree”

**uterque:** subject of *Verebatur*, refers to Paul and Ferdinand

**ne ... portenderent:** fear clause dependent on *Verebatur*

**fuere:** alt. form of *fuerunt*; here with sense of “existed” or “happened”

**ne ... existimes:** neg. purpose clause

**sequenti anno:** abl. of time when; 1466

**Franciscus Sfortia:** Francesco Sforza of Milan, powerful *condottiero*

**Genuae ... fuerat:** Genoa had been under the control of the Milanese Francesco Sforza since 1464, after he had aided the Genoese in their rebellion against the French and had installed a puppet ruler

**biennio:** abl. of degree of difference, take with *ante*

fuerat, dedentibus sese civibus, diutino bello, partim intestino et gravi partim externo, agitatis. Gallorum enim dominatum (quem sponte petierant) reiicientes, ad sex millia Gallici [377] nominis ante oculos Renati regis interfecere, qui cum triremibus aliquot bene armatis aderat recuperandae urbis causa, quae iam a Gallis defecerat.

**adsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:** be present  
**agito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up, impel  
**aliquot (*indecl.*):** some  
**armatus, -a, -um:** armed  
**bene (*adv.*):** well  
**civis, -is *m./f.*:** citizen  
**dedo, -ere, dedidi, deditus:** give up,  
 surrender  
**deficio, -ere, defeci, defectus:** revolt, defect  
**diutinus, -a, -um:** long, long lasting  
**dominatus, -us *m.*:** rule  
**externus, -a, -um:** external, foreign  
**Gallicus, -a, -um:** Gallic, French  
**Galli, -orum *m.*:** the Gauls; the French

**gravis, -e:** painful, serious  
**iam (*adv.*):** now, already  
**interficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** kill, destroy  
**intestinus, -a, -um:** internal, domestic  
**mille, millia (CL *mille, milia*):** thousand  
**oculus, -i *m.*:** eye  
**partim (*adv.*):** partly  
**peto, -ere, -ivi(ii), -itus:** desire, ask for  
**recupero, -are, -avi, -atus:** regain  
**reiicio, -ere, reieci, reiectus:** refuse, reject  
**sex:** six  
**spons, spontis *f.*:** free will  
**triremis, -is *f.*:** trireme

**dedentibus ... civibus:** abl. abs.  
**sese:** “themselves,” acc. obj. of *dedentibus*  
**bello:** abl. of means with *agitatis*  
**agitatis:** agrees with *civibus*  
**Gallorum:** subjective gen.; substantive adj., “of the Gauls”  
**dominatum:** acc. obj. of *reiicientes*  
**sponte:** abl. of manner, lacks *cum* in this expression; so “willingly,” “of their own accord”  
**reiicientes:** the Genoese; subject of *interfecere*  
**ad sex millia:** *ad* + number, “around”; obj. of *interfecere*  
**Gallici nominis:** “of the Gallic name (i.e. French)”  
**Renati:** René of Anjou, who claimed the title King of Naples  
**interfecere:** alt. form of *interfecerunt*  
**cum triremibus ... armatis:** abl. of accompaniment  
**recuperandae ... causa:** *causa* + gen. gerundive to express purpose, “for the sake of the city to be regained (i.e. to regain the city)”

*Paul resolves to maintain order in Italy and moves to assure a smooth succession in Milan*

**34** Mortuo itaque Francisco Sfortia Mediolanensium Duce, cardinales statim Paulus ad se vocat, quid esset agendum consultit. Censuere omnes mittendas esse litteras et nuncios ad principes Italiae, ad populos, qui eos adhortarentur nil novi moliri sed pacem ante initam servare, maxime vero tam iniquo tempore, quo a Thurco

---

**adhortor, -ari, -atus sum:** encourage, rally  
**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** act, do  
**ante (adv.):** earlier  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**censeo, -ere, censui, census:** decide, determine  
**consulo, -sulere, -sului, -sultus:** consult, deliberate, consider  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader; duke  
**ineo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** enter, establish  
**iniquus, -a, -um:** uneven, hostile  
**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy  
**litterae, -arum f.:** letter (epistle)  
**maxime (adv.):** especially, most

**Mediolanensis, -e:** Milanese  
**molior, -iri, -itus sum:** undertake, plan  
**novus, -a, -um:** new  
**nuncius, -i (CL *nuntius*) m.:** messenger  
**populus, -i m.:** people, nation  
**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader, prince  
**servo, -are, -avi, -atus:** preserve  
**statim (adv.):** at once, immediately  
**tam (adv.):** so  
**tempus, -oris n.:** time  
**Thurcus, -a, -um:** Turkish  
**vero (adv.):** truly  
**voco, -are, -avi, -atus:** call

---

**Mortuo ... Francisco Sfortia ... Duce:** abl. abs.; Francesco Sforza (1401-1466)

**Mediolanensium:** substantive adj., “of the Milanese”

**vocat ... consulit:** asyndeton

**quid esset agendum:** pass. periphrastic in ind. question dependent on *consulit*, “what ought to be done”

**Censuere:** alternate form of *censuerunt*

**omnes:** the cardinals; subject of *censuere*

**mittendas esse:** *mittendas* modifies both *litteras* and *nuncios*, but takes its gender from the closer word; phrase is pass. periphrastic in ind. statement “that letters ... ought to be sent”

**qui eos adhortarentur:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order to urge them”

**novi:** partitive gen., nothing “(of) new”

**moliri sed ... servare:** obj. infinitives of *adhortarentur*

**iniquo tempore:** abl. of time when, antecedent to *quo*, an abl. of time within which  
**a Thurco ... hoste:** the Ottomans conquered Constantinople in 1453. The sacking of a city many Christians thought unconquerable signaled the end of the Byzantine Empire and sent shockwaves through the Christian world. The Popes who reigned in the years following, including Paul II, would be preoccupied with planning to retake Constantinople from the Turks

communi Christianorum hoste vexaremur. Praeterea vero epis-  
copum Conchensem Mediolanum mittit oratum populum illum ut  
nil antiquius fide putaret quam Galeatio Francisci filio praestiterat.

*Galeazzo Sforza, son of Francesco, returns from France and takes control of Milan with his mother's help*

**35** Aberat tum Galeatus iussu patris in Galliam cum exercitu  
missus, dum rex Alovisius cum principibus regni dicto suo haud

**absum, abesse, afui, afuturus:** be away, be  
absent  
**antiquus, -a, -um:** old, time-honored  
**Christianus, -a, -um:** Christian  
**communis, -e:** common  
**Conchensis, -e:** of Cuenca, a town in Spain  
**dictum, -i n.:** word; command  
**episcopus, -i m.:** bishop  
**exercitus, -us m.:** army  
**fides, fidei f.:** loyalty; pledge of protection  
**Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, France  
**haud (adv.):** not at all  
**hostis, -is m./f.:** enemy

**iussus, -us m.:** order  
**Mediolanum, -i n.:** Milan  
**nil n. (indecl.):** nothing  
**oro, -are, -avi, -atus:** beg  
**populus, -i m.:** people, populace  
**praesto, -are, -stiti, -stitus:** supply; vouch  
    for; maintain  
**praeterea (adv.):** in addition  
**princeps, principis m.:** leader; prince  
**regnum, -i n.:** kingdom  
**vero (adv.):** in fact  
**vexo, -are, -avi, -atus:** harass

**communi:** agrees with *Thurco ... hoste*

**vexaremur:** subjunctive in a rel. clause in ind. statement

**episcopum Conchensem:** Giacopo Antonio Venier, Bishop of Cuenca and Papal

Nuncio to Francesco Sforza in Milan starting in 1460

**Mediolanum:** acc. of place to which

**oratum:** acc. supine expressing purpose

**ut ... putaret:** purpose clause

**antiquius:** neut. acc. sing., compar. of *antiquus*

**fide:** abl. of comparison

**quam:** antecedent is *fide*

**Galeatio Francisci filio:** Galeazzo Sforza, son of Francesco Sforza; dat. of ind. obj.

**Galeatus:** Galeazzo Sforza was in France aiding King Louis XI against King Charles I of Burgundy

**iussu:** abl. of cause, “at the command”

**Alovisius:** Louis XI, King of France (r. 1461-1483)

**cum principibus:** abl. of accompaniment, here translated “against”

**dicto suo:** dat. with the compound verb *obtemperantibus*

**haud quaquam:** idiom, “not at all”

quaquam obtemperantibus bellum gerit. Ex foedere enim dum Genuam in pheudum accipit, praesidia regi Franciscus subministrabat. Requirebat et hoc affinitas inter eos contracta, cum Galeatus reginae ac ducis Sabaudiae sororem in uxorem {235R} accepisset. Qui cognita patris morte, relicto bello, quod regio nomine contra Burgundiae ducem incohaverat, Lugduno abiens, ac cum paucis

**abeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** depart  
**accipio, -ere, accepi (CL *accepi*), acceptus:**  
 take, receive  
**affinitas, -tatis f.:** relation by marriage  
**cognosco, -noscere, -novi, -nitus:** learn  
**contra:** against (+ *acc.*)  
**contraho, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus:** contract  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader; duke  
**foedus, foederis n.:** treaty  
**Genua, -ae f.:** Genoa  
**gero, -ere, gessi, gestus:** bear, carry  
**inchoo, -are, -avi, -atus:** begin  
**Lugdunum, -i n.:** Lyon, a town in France  
**mors, mortis f.:** death  
**obtempero, -are, -avi, -atus:** obey (+ *dat.*)

**paucus, -a, -um:** few  
**pheudum, -i (or *feudum*) n.:** fiefdom; feudal  
 allegiance  
**praesidium, -i n.:** assistance; auxiliary forces  
 (*pl.*)  
**regius, -a, -um:** of a king, royal  
**relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum:** leave  
 behind, abandon  
**requiro, -ere, requisivi, requisitus:** require  
**Sabaudia, -ae f.:** Savoy, a territory in the  
 Western Alps in today's Rhone-Alpes  
 region  
**subministro, -are, -avi, -atus:** supply  
**uxor, -oris f.:** wife

**obtemperantibus:** agrees with *principibus*  
**bellum gerit:** “wages war”  
**ex foedere:** here, “by the treaty”  
**regi:** dat. of advantage, “for the benefit of the king”  
**Franciscus:** Francesco Sforza (1401-1466)  
**Requirebat:** subject is *affinitas*  
**hoc:** acc. obj. of *Requirebat*, referring to Galeazzo's intervention in France  
**cum ... accepisset:** causal *cum* clause  
**ducis Sabaudiae sororem:** Bona of Savoy, member of the noble Italian House of  
 Savoy and second wife to Galeazzo Sforza  
**in uxorem:** “in wedlock”  
**cognita ... morte:** abl. abs.  
**relicto bello:** abl. abs.  
**quod:** acc. obj. of *incohaverat*; antecedent is *bello*  
**regio nomine:** abl. of attendant circumstance, “under the king's name”  
**Burgundiae ducem:** Philip III of Burgundy (r. 1419-1467), which was located in the  
 Low Countries and Switzerland  
**Lugduno:** abl. of place from which  
**cum paucis:** substantive adj. “with a few people”

permutata veste in patriam rediens, ditione paterna auxilio matris,  
quae populos in fide continuerat, sine ulla contentione potitur.

*Paul considers aiding the Knights of Rhodes*

**36** Paulus vero compositis hoc modo Italiae rebus, cum intellegereret militiam Rhodiorum Militum ob inopiam ad nihilum redigi, eorum magistrum ac primates religionis ad se vocat corrigendi erroris

**auxilium, -i n.:** help

**compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:** arrange  
**contentio, -onis f.:** contention

**contineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus:** maintain,  
preserve

**corrigo, -rigere, -rexi, -rectum:** amend,  
reform

**ditio, -onis (CL *dicio*) f.:** power

**error, -oris m.:** error

**fides, fidei f.:** faith, loyalty

**inopia, -ae f.:** need, poverty

**intellego, -legere, -lexi, -lectus:** realize

**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy

**magister, -tri m.:** master

**miles, militis m.:** soldier

**militia, -ae f.:** army

**modus, -i m.:** manner

**nihilum, -i n.:** nothing

**paternus, -a, -um:** ancestral

**patria, -ae f.:** native land

**permuto, -are, -avi, -atus:** swap, exchange  
**populus, -i m.:** people

**potior, -iri, -itus sum:** obtain (+ abl.)

**primas, primatis:** leader, primate

**redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** go back, return

**redigo, -ere, redegi, redactus:** reduce

**religio, -onis f.:** religion

**Rhodius, -a, -um:** Rhodian, of Rhodes

**sine:** without (+ abl.)

**ullus, -a, -um:** any

**vero:** but, however

**vestis, -is f.:** clothes

**voco, -are, -avi, -atus:** call

**permutata veste:** abl. abs.

**ditione paterna:** abl. with *potitur*

**auxilio:** abl. of means

**populus:** CL would use sing.

**compositis ... rebus:** abl. abs., “when the affairs of Italy had been settled,” referring to  
Paul’s actions in the papal states (ch. 26-28), his struggles with Naples (ch. 29-32),  
and the succession in Milan (ch. 33-35)

**hoc modo:** abl. of manner

**cum intellegeret:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**militiam ... redigi:** ind. statement introduced by *intellegeret*

**Rhodiorum Militum:** the Knights of Rhodes, a group of Knights Hospitallers who  
lived on the island of Rhodes under the threat of an Ottoman invasion from  
Sultan Mehmet II

**Militum:** gen. pl. with *militiam*

**corrigendi ... causa:** *causa* + gen. gerundive indicates purpose, “for the sake of their  
error to be corrected (i.e. to correct their error)”

causa, qui post frequentes conventus ad S. Petrum habitos tedium animi et senio confectus moritur, sepeliturque in basilica Sancti Petri non longe a sacello Sancti Andreae; in cuius locum Carolus Ursinus suffectus, Rhodum ad tuendam insulam propere mittitur.

*Paul punishes several local heretics*

**37** Interim vero cum Paulo nunciatum [378] esset, in Poli, oppido in Equicolis posito, multos haereticos inesse, dominum loci

**animus, -i m.**: soul

**basilica, -ae f.**: basilica

**conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus**: consume

**conventus, -us m.**: meeting

**dominus, -i m.**: lord, master

**Equiculus, -a, -um** (CL *Aequiculus*): related to the Aequi, a people just east of Rome in ancient Italy; here with an assumed *fnibus* ("territory")

**frequens, -entis**: numerous

**haereticus, -i m.**: heretic

**insula, -ae f.**: island

**insum, -esse, -fui, -futurus**: be in

**interim (adv.)**: meanwhile

**locus, -i m.**: place; position

**longe (adv.)**: far (off)

**nuncio, -are, -avi, -atus** (CL *nuntio*):

announce

**oppidum, -i n.**: town

**Poli (indecl.)**: Poli, a town East of Rome

**pono, -ere, -ui, -itus**: place; locate

**properus, -a, -um**: quick, speedy

**Rhodus, -i f.**: Rhodes, island in the Aegean Sea

**sacellum, -i n.**: shrine

**sanctus, -i m.**: saint

**senium, -i n.**: condition of old age

**sepelio, -ire, sepelivi, sepultus**: bury

**sufficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus**: appoint, replace

**tedium, -i** (CL *taedium*) **n.**: weariness

**tueor, -eri, -itus sum**: protect

**vero (adv.)**: in fact, moreover

**post frequentes conventus ... habitos**: "after numerous meetings held"

**ad**: here, "near"

**S(anctum) Petrum**: the Basilica of St. Peter, in Rome

**Sancti Andreae**: St. Andrew, gen.

**Carolus Ursinus**: Carlo Orsini, a member of the Orsini family, which was powerful in Rome

**Rhodum**: acc. of place to which

**ad tuendam**: *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, "for the island to be protected (i.e. to protect the island)"

**cum ... nunciatum esset**: circumstantial *cum* clause

**nunciatum esset**: impers., "it was announced"

**oppido**: appositive to *Poli*

**haereticos**: Fraticelli, who believed that popes and prelates were illegitimate unless they followed the poverty of Jesus

**inesse**: ind. statement introduced by *nunciatum esset*

cum viris octo et foeminis sex comprehensos, et ad se perductos, cognito hominum errore, ignominia notavit, et quidem gravissima, eos potissimum qui pertinaciores fuere. Nam mitius cum his est actum qui errorem confessi veniam petiere. Erant enim eius sectae quam a perversa mentis opinione esse dicimus, quod dicerent nullum verum Christi vicarium esse eorum qui post Petrum fuere, nisi qui paupertatem Christi imitati sunt.

**ago, -ere, egi, actum:** do, handle

**Christus, -i m.:** Christ

**cognosco, -noscere, -novi, -nitus:** recognize, learn

**comprehendo, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus:** seize, arrest

**confiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum:** confess, admit error, -oris m.: wandering, error

**foemina, -ae** (CL *femina*) f.: woman

**gravis, -e:** heavy, painful, serious

**ignominia, -ae f.:** disgrace, dishonor

**imitor, -ari, -atus sum:** imitate, copy, follow

**mens, mentis f.:** mind

**mite** (*adv.*): mildly

**noto, -are, -avi, -atus:** brand

**nullus, -a, -um:** no, no one

**octo** (*indecl.*): eight

**opinio, -onis f.:** belief, opinion

**paupertas, -tatis f.:** poverty, need

**perduco, -ere, -duxii, -ductus:** lead

**pertinax, -acis:** tenacious, stubborn

**aversus, -a, -um:** askew, perverse

**peto, -ere, -ivi(ii), -itus:** seek, ask (for)

**potissimum** (*adv.*): chiefly, principally, especially

**secta, -ae f.:** party, sect

**sex** (*indecl.*): six

**venia, -ae f.:** favor, pardon

**verus, -a, -um:** true, real, genuine

**vicarius, -i m.:** vicar

**comprehensos ... perductos:** these participles modify *dominum* and so technically should be sing., but the pl. is used because of the accompanying 8 men and 6 women

**hominum:** = *eorum* (see Introduction 7.E)

**pertinaciores:** compar. of *pertinax*

**fuere:** alt. form of *fuerunt*

**mitius:** compar. adv.

**est actum:** impers., "it was handled"

**errorem confessi:** *confiteor* (deponent) takes the acc., *confessi* is in apposition to *qui*

**petiere:** alt. form of *petierunt*

**eius sectae:** gen. of description

**quam:** antecedent is *sectae*

**quod dicerent:** causal *quod* clause of alleged reason, "on the grounds that they say"

**nullum ... esse:** ind. statement

**Christi vicarium:** The Vicar of Christ, one of the titles of the pope

**post Petrum:** Peter the apostle, the first pope (according to Catholic tradition)

**fuere:** alt. form of *fuerunt*

*Paul creates several new cardinals*

**38** Aucto deinde cardinalium numero, ad X enim eodem tempore creavit, quorum de numero ii fuere: Franciscus Savonensis ordinis Minorum generalis, M. Barbo praesul Vicentinus, cuius opera et consilio magnis in rebus semper est usus, Oliverius archiepiscopus Neapolitanus, A. episcopus Aquilanu, Theodorus Monferratus: reliqui partim Galli partim Ungari et Angli sunt habiti.

<b>Angli, -orum</b> <i>m.</i> : English	<b>Neapolitanus, -a, -um</b> : Neapolitan, of Naples
<b>Aquilanu</b> , <i>-a, -um</i> : of Aquila, in central Italy	
<b>archiepiscopu</b> , <i>-i m.</i> : archbishop	
<b>augeo, -ere, auxi, auctu</b> s: increase	<b>numeru</b> s, <i>-i m.</i> : number
<b>cardinalis, -is</b> <i>m.</i> : cardinal	<b>opera, -ae f.</b> : work, aid
<b>consilium, -i n.</b> : consultation, advice, counsel	<b>ordo, ordinis</b> <i>m.</i> : order (of monks)
<b>creo, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : create; appoint	<b>partim</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): partly
<b>deinde</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): then, afterward	<b>praesul, praesulis</b> <i>m./f.</i> : prelate
<b>episcopus, -i m.</b> : bishop	<b>reliquu</b> s, <i>-a, -um</i> : rest of, remaining
<b>Galli, -orum</b> <i>m.</i> : French	<b>Savonensi</b> , <i>-e</i> : of Savona, a town near Genoa
<b>generalis, -is</b> <i>m.</i> : general (here, meaning leader)	<b>tempus, -oris</b> <i>n.</i> : time
<b>idem, eadem, idem</b> : same	<b>Ungari, -orum</b> <i>m.</i> : Hungarian
<b>Monferratus, -a, -um</b> : of Monferrato, in the Piedmont region of northern Italy	<b>utor, uti, usus sum</b> : use, enjoy; (+ <i>abl.</i> )
	<b>Vicentinu</b> , <i>-a -um</i> : of Vicenza, a town in Northern Italy

**Aucto ... numero**: abl. abs.

**ad X**: *ad* + numeral expresses approximation, “around ten”; obj. of *creavit*

**eodem tempore**: abl. of time when; late 1467 and 1468

**fuere**: alt. form of *fuerunt*

**Franciscus Savonensis**: Francesco della Rovere, General of the Franciscan Order; he succeeded Paul II as Sixtus IV (r. 1471-1484); Platina dedicated his *Lives of the Popes* to him

**ordinis Minorum**: of the “order of the Lesser ones,” i.e. the Franciscan Order, a group of monks known for living in poverty

**M. Barbo**: Marco Barbo (a relative of Paul II), a humanist famous for his sizable library

**praesul Vicentinu ... est usus**: in the manuscripts, Platina added this phrase in the margin

**magnis**: here, “important”

**est usus**: subject is Paul

**Oliverius ... Neapolitanu**: Oliviero Carafa, the Archbishop of Naples

**A(micus) ... Aquilanu**: Amico Agnifili, Bishop of Aquila, tutor of Pope Paul II

**Theodorus Monferratus**: Teodoro di Monferrato

**reliqui**: namely, Jean de la Balue, Bishop of Angers and close counselor of Louis XI of France; Stephan Varda, Archbishop of Kalocsa; Thomas Bourchier, Archbishop of Canterbury

*The Battle of Molinella: Florentine exiles try to return with the help of Venice and Bartolomeo Colleoni; Florence fights back with the help of Naples and Galeazzo Sforza*

**39** Senatu itaque in hunc modum aucto ad componendam Italiae pacem totus convertitur. Nam [379] cum Florentini quidam, a factione Petri Medices civili discordia pulsi (ut Detesalus Neronius, et Angelus Accioiolus, ac Nicolaus Sudorinus), Bartholemeum Bergomatem concitassent, qui magnam vim equitum ac peditum habebat, ut in Hetruriam cum exercitu movens se ac extorres omnes

**augeo, -ere, auxi, auctus:** increase, enlarge  
**civilis, -e:** civil  
**compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:** put together, order; settle  
**concito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up  
**converto, -vertere, -verti, -versus:** turn, direct attention  
**discordia, -ae f.:** disagreement, discord  
**eques, equitis m.:** knight; cavalry (*pl.*)  
**exercitus, -us m.:** army, force  
**extorris, -e:** exiled  
**factio, -onis f.:** party, faction

**Florentinus, -a , -um:** Florentine, of Florence  
**Hetruriae, -ae (CL *Etruria*) f.:** Etruria (or Tuscany), a region in Italy  
**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy  
**modus, -i m.:** manner, measure  
**moveo, -ere, movi, motus:** move  
**pedes, peditis m.:** foot soldier; infantry (*pl.*)  
**pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsus:** drive out, banish  
**senatus, -us m.:** here, College of Cardinals  
**totus, -a, -um:** whole, entire  
**vis, vis f.:** strength; (+ gen.) abundance of

**Senatu ... aucto:** abl. abs.

**in hunc modum:** “to this measure”

**ad componendam ... pacem:** *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “in order for the peace to be settled (i.e. to settle the peace)”

**totus:** modifying the understood subject, Paul; nom. adjectives can be translated adverbially, “entirely”

**cum ... concitassent:** circumstantial *cum* clause; *concita(vi)ssent* is the syncopated form

**Petri Medices:** gen. of Piero Medici (*Medices* is indeclinable), a member of the powerful *Medici* faction in Florentine politics, son of Cosimo de’ Medici and father of Lorenzo the Magnificent

**civili discordia:** abl. of means

**pulsi:** antecedent is *Florentini*

**ut:** “as (for instance)” beginning the list of three exiled Florentines

**Detesalus Neronius, Angelus Accioiolus, Nicolaus Sudorinus:** the *quidam Florentini* who were exiled by Piero Medici for attempting a coup in 1466

**Bartholomeum Bergomatem:** Bartolomeo Colleoni, an Italian *condottiero* who fought for both the Milanese Sforza and the Venetians

**qui:** antecedent is *Bartholomeum*

**ut ... reduceret:** ind. command dependent on *concitassent*

in patriam reduceret; adiuvantibus etiam Venetis, occulte tamen, primo quidem impetu posse et velle subvertere totam Italiam visus est. Verum cum in Flamminea Galeacium ducem Mediolanensem obvium habuisset cum regis ac Florentini populi copiis, habenas inhibuit, et cunctando potius quam pugnando vincere annixus est. Pugnatum est tamen semel, atque acriter comitis Urbinatis auspiciis

**acriter** (*adv.*): sharply; fiercely  
**adiuvo, -are, adiuvi, adiutus**: help, aid  
**annitor, anniti, annixus sum**: strive  
**auspicium, -i n.**: auspices (*pl.*)  
**comes, comitis m.**: companion; count  
**copia, -ae f.**: abundance; troops (*pl.*)  
**cuncto, -are, -avi, -atus**: delay  
**dux, ducis m.**: leader; duke  
**Flamminea, -ae (CL *Flaminia*) f.**: the region around the Via Flaminia, near Rimini in northern Italy  
**habena, -ae f.**: reins (*pl.*)  
**impetus, -us m.**: attack, assault  
**inhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itus**: restrain, hold back  
**Italia, -ae f.**: Italy  
**Mediolanensis, -e**: Milanese, of Milan  
**obvius, -a, -um**: in the way

**occulte** (*adv.*): secretly  
**patria, -ae f.**: native land  
**populus, -i m.**: people, state  
**potius** (*adv.*): rather  
**primus, -a, -um**: first  
**pugno, -are, -avi, -atus**: fight  
**reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductus**: lead back; restore  
**semel**: at one time, once and for all  
**subverto, -vertere, -verti, -versus**: overturn, overthrow  
**totus, -a, -um**: whole, all  
**Urbinas, -atis**: of Urbino  
**Venetus, -a, -um**: Venetian  
**verum** (*adv.*): but; however  
**vinco, -ere, vici, victus**: conquer, win  
**volo, velle, volui, -**: want; be willing

**adiuvantibus ... Venetis**: abl. abs. with causal sense  
**posse et velle**: complementary infinitives with *visus est*  
**subvertere**: complementary inf. with *posse et velle*  
**visus est**: subject is Bartolomeo Colleoni; *video* in passive is “he seemed”  
**cum ... habuisset**: causal *cum* clause, subject is Bartholomeo Colleoni  
**Galeacium**: Galeazzo Sforza, Duke of Milan; on the spelling see Introduction 6.A  
**ducem**: appositive to *Galeacium*  
**cum regis ac Florentini populi copiis**: abl. of accompaniment, “with the troops of the King (of Naples) and of the Florentine people”  
**inhibuit**: the main verb of the sentence; subject is Bartolomeo Colleoni  
**cunctando ... pugnando**: gerunds; ablatives of means, “by delaying ... by fighting”  
**potius quam**: “rather than”  
**Pugnatum est**: impers., “it was fought” or “there was a fight”; refers to the Battle of Molinella  
**comitis Urbinatis**: Federico da Montefeltro, Count of Urbino. He was a highly successful *condottiero* who oversaw the construction of a great library in Urbino  
**auspiciis**: abl. of attendant circumstance, “under the auspices” (i.e. the count of Urbino was in charge)

in agro Bononiensi ad Ricardinam (id ei loco nomen est) dum castrametatur. Quo quidem tempore de Bergomate actum certe erat, si tum Galeacius affuisset, qui Florentiam compenendae rei bellicae causa profectus paulo ante fuerat. Ferunt, qui tanto proelio interfuerent, nusquam aetate nostra maiore contentionē {235v} certatum esse, nec prēlūm antea fuisse in quo plures desiderati fuerint.

**aetas, -tatis** *f.*: lifetime, age

**ager, agri** *m.*: field, country

**ago, -ere, egi, actus**: drive, urge, conduct, act  
**assum, adesse, affui, affuturus**: be present,  
be in attendance

**bellicus, -a, -um**: of war, military

**Bononienis, -e**: Bolognese, of Bologna

**castrametor, -ari, -atus sum**: encamp

**certe (adv.)**: surely, certainly, without doubt

**certo, -are, -avi, -atus**: fight

**compendo, -pendere, -pensi, -pensus**:

weigh, settle

**contentio, -onis** *f.*: intensity

**desidero, -are, -avi, -atus**: desire; lose

**fero, ferre, tuli, latus**: bring; tell

**Florentia, -ae** *f.*: Florence

**intersum, -esse, -fui, -futurus**: be present,  
take part in

**locus, -i** *m.*: position; place

**nusquam (adv.)**: nowhere, on no occasion

**paulo (adv.)**: by a little, a little

**proelium, -i** *n.*: battle

**proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum**: depart, set  
out

**prēlūm, -i** (*CL proelium*) *n.*: battle

**tempus, -oris** *n.*: time

**agro Bononiensi**: “the territory of Bologna”

**ad Ricardinam**: “near Riccardina,” a village in Northern Italy

**ei loco**: dat. of the possessor

**Quo ... tempore**: abl. of time when with *quo* acting as a connective rel., “and at this time”

**Bergomate**: Bartolomeo Colleoni

**actum ... erat**: “it would have been done (i.e. he would have died)”; the apodosis of the past contrafactual cond. is indic. to vividly present a fact

**Galeacius**: Galeazzo Sforza, Duke of Milan

**Florentiam**: acc. of place to which

**compenendae rei bellicae causa**: *causa* + gen. gerundive expressing purpose, “for the sake of a military matter to be settled (i.e. to settle a military matter)”

**profectus ... fuerat**: pluperf. (*CL profectus erat*, see Introduction 7.D)

**qui**: antecedent is assumed *ii*, subject of *ferunt*

**interfuere**: alt. form of *interfuerunt*

**nusquam ... certatum esse ... fuisse**: ind. statement introduced by *ferunt*

**aetate nostra**: abl. of time within which

**maiore contentionē**: abl. of manner

**certatum esse**: impers., “there was a fight”

**quo ... desiderati fuerint**: rel. clause in ind. statement

**plures**: compar. of *multus*, substantive

*Amid complex military and political maneuvering, Paul brokers a peace*

**40** Tum autem Veneti sibi potius quam homini carentes, cohortibus aliquot et turmis ei in auxilium missis, pacem enixius quaerere, eius conficiendae arbitrium omne in pontificem deferentes. Qui rei suae quoque admodum timens si victoria ad regem et ducem recideret, ut pax [380] conficeretur instabat. Erat enim opinio quorundam

---

**admodum** (*adv.*): greatly  
**aliquot** (*indecl.*): a few  
**arbitrium, -i n.**: judgment, decision  
**auxilium, -i n.**: help, assistance  
**caveo, -ere, cavi, cautus**: beware, take precautions  
**cohors, -hortis f.**: cohort, armed force  
**conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus**: complete, accomplish  
**defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus**: defer  
**dux, ducis m.**: leader; duke  
**enixe** (*adv.*): earnestly, with strenuous efforts

**insto, -are, institi, -** : urge  
**opinio, -onis f.**: belief, idea, opinion  
**pontifex, -ficus m.**: pontiff, pope  
**potius** (*adv.*): more  
**quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus**: seek  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam**: a certain one  
**recido, -ere, recidi, recasus**: fall back, go  
**timeo, -ere, -ui, -** : fear, be afraid  
**turma, -ae f.**: troop, squadron  
**Venetus, -a, -um**: Venetian  
**victoria, -ae f.**: victory

---

**potius quam**: “rather than”  
**homini**: Bartolomeo Colleoni  
**cohortibus ... turmis ... missis**: abl. abs. with concessive sense  
**in auxilium**: acc. denoting purpose, “for help”  
**enixius**: compar. adv.  
**quaerere**: historical inf., “began to seek”  
**eius conficiendae**: gen. gerundive phrase, “of this (peace) to be accomplished (i.e. of accomplishing this peace)”  
**in pontificem**: *in* + acc., “to the pope”  
**Qui**: connecting rel., “And he” (i.e. the pope)  
**rei suae**: “his own situation,” dat. of reference with *timens*  
**timens si ... recideret**: imperf. subjunctive used for fut. more vivid conditionals in (implied) ind. statement in secondary sequence, “fearing (what would happen) if victory would go to ...”  
**regem et ducem**: King Ferdinand of Naples and Duke Galeazzo Sforza of Milan  
**ut ... conficeretur**: ind. command dependent on *instabat*

hominum non vulgarium, Bartholemeum connivente pontifice Padum traięcisse, quo mutato Florentinorum statu inferre bellum Ferdinando regi commodius posset, cui ita infensus erat, ut accire contra eum novos quoque in Italiam hostes cogitaverit. Vocatis itaque ad se omnium principum legatis, pacem his rationibus composuit: ut utraque pars quae bello cęperat redderet, utque Bartholemeus copias suas in Cisalpinam Galliam reduceret, servareturque pax

**accio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** invite

**capiro, -ere, cepi** (CL *cepi*), **captus:** seize,  
occupy

**cogito, -are, -avi, -atus:** consider; devise how,  
plot to

**commode** (*adv.*): conveniently

**compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:** arrange  
**conniveo, -ere, -ivi, -:** blink; turn a blind eye  
**contra:** against (+ *acc.*)

**copia, -ae f.:** abundance; troops (pl.)

**Florentinus, -a, -um:** Florentine, of Florence  
**hostis, -is m./f.:** enemy

**infensus, -a, -um:** hostile

**infero, inferre, intuli, illatus:** bring in; inflict  
**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy

**legatus, -i m.:** envoy, ambassador

**muto, -are, -avi, -atus:** move, change,  
exchange

**novus, -a, -um:** new

**Padus, -i m.:** Po river

**pars, partis f.:** party

**pontifex, -ficiis m.:** pontiff, pope

**princeps, principis m.:** leader; prince

**ratio, -onis f.:** reasoning, plan

**reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus:** return

**reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductus:** lead back,  
bring back

**servo, -are, -avi, -atus:** protect, keep, preserve

**status, -us m.:** situation, condition

**tracio, -ere, traięci** (CL *traiecti*), **traiectus:**  
transfer, cross

**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each, either

**voco, -are, -avi, -atus:** to call

**vulgaris, -e:** common

**Bartholemeum ... traięcisse:** Bartolomeo Colleoni; ind. statement introduced by  
*opinio*

**connivente pontifice:** abl. abs. Platina originally wrote that Bartolomeo crossed the Po with Paul “egging him on” (*adhortante*), which he later softened to “turning a blind eye” (*connivente*)

**quo ... posset:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that he be able ...”

**mutato ... statu:** abl. abs.

**Ferdinando regi:** dat. of ind. obj. with *inferre*; King Ferdinand I of Naples

**commodius:** compar. adv.

**ut ... cogitaverit:** result clause

**Vocatis ... legatis:** abl. abs.

**his rationibus:** abl. of description, “with these terms”; *his* looks forward to the subsequent *ut* clause

**ut ... redderet, utque ... reduceret, (ut) servareturque ... :** noun clause, “that ... would return, and that ... would bring back, and that ... would be kept”

**Bartholemeus:** Bartolomeo Colleoni

**Cisalpinam Galliam:** Cisalpine Gaul (Northern Italy above the Po river)

illa, quae antea inter Franciscum Sfortiam et Venetos apud Laudam Pompeianam composita fuerat.

*Galeazzo Sforza does not want the Duke of Savoy to be included in the peace; the King of France ultimately settles things*

**41** In una re tantum addubitatum est, excludereturne a pace Italiae Sabaudiae dux, vel Philippus frater, qui eo anno Venetorum stipendiis militaverat, provinciam Galeacii bello vexerat. Petebant Veneti ut inter foederatos is quoque censeretur. Negabat id fieri

---

<b>addubito, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> doubt, be uncertain
<b>annus, -i m.:</b> year
<b>antea (adv.):</b> before, in the past
<b>censeo, -ere, censui, census:</b> judge, count
<b>compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:</b> place together, arrange
<b>dux, ducis m.:</b> leader; duke
<b>excludo, -ere, exclusi, exclusus:</b> shut out, exclude
<b>fio, feri, factus sum:</b> happen
<b>foederatus, -a, -um:</b> allied
<b>Italia, -ae f.:</b> Italy

---

<b>milito, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> serve as soldier
<b>nego, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> refuse, say ... not
<b>peto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:</b> fall upon; desire, ask (for)
<b>provincia, -ae f.:</b> province
<b>Sabaudia, -ae f.:</b> Savoy, region in northwest Italy
<b>stipendum, -i n.:</b> pay, (military) wages
<b>tantum (adv.):</b> only
<b>unus, -a, -um:</b> one
<b>veho, -ere, vixi, vectus:</b> bear, drag
<b>Venetus, -a, -um:</b> Venetian

---

**pax illa:** “that famous peace,” the Peace of Lodi (1454), an agreement signed between Milan, Venice, and Florence that solidified the balance of power in Northern Italy and ushered in years of relative peace

**Franciscum Sfortiam:** Francesco Sforza, Duke of Milan

**Laudam Pompeianam:** Lodi, a town in Lombardy

**composita fuerat:** pluperf. (CL *composita erat*, see Introduction 7.D)

**addubitatum est:** impers., “it was doubted” or “there was doubt”

**excludereturne:** *-ne* introduces ind. question “whether he be excluded...”

**Sabaudiae dux ... Philippus frater:** Louis I, Duke of Savoy from 1440-1465, and his brother, Philip

**eo anno:** abl. of time within which

**stipendiis:** abl. of attendant circumstance, “under the wages”

**Galeacii:** Galeazzo Sforza, Duke of Milan

**bello:** abl. of means

**ut ... censeretur:** ind. command

**is:** the Duke of Savoy (and his brother, Philip)

**id:** that Savoy be included among those allied. Also subject acc. of *posse* in ind. statement

posse Galeacius, cum diceret eum se nunquam pro amico et socio habiturum, quem rex Franciae hostem haberet. Verum tantum valuit Paulus blanditiis et pollicitacionibus ut legatum Galeacii contra principis sui decretum in sententiam sui ipsius traxerit. Hanc ob rem iratus Galeacius et Laurentium Pisauriensem legatum suum exilio mulctavit et Sabaudienses ita bello vexavit, ut eos pacem exposcere coegerit; quae quidem ex arbitrio regis Franciae postea composita

**arbitrium, -i n.:** arbitration, authority

**blanditiae, -arum f.:** flatteries, enticements

**cogo, -ere, coegi (CL coegi), coactus:** force, compel

**compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:**

arrange, settle

**contra:** against, contrary to (+ acc.)

**decretem, -i n.:** decree

**exilium, -i n.:** exile

**exposco, -ere, expoposci, - :** request, ask for  
Francia, -ae f.: France

**hostis, -is m./f.:** enemy

**iratus, -a, -um:** angry, enraged

**legatus, -i m.:** ambassador, legate

**mulcto, -are, -avi, -atus:** punish

**nunquam (adv.):** never

**pollicitacio, -onis (CL pollicitatio) f.:** promise

**postea (adv.):** afterwards

**princeps, principis m.:** leader; prince

**pro:** on behalf of, as (+ abl.)

**Sabaudiensis, -e:** Savoyard, of Savoy

**sententia, -ae f.:** opinion, purpose

**tantum (adv.):** so much

**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus:** draw, draw in

**valeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** be influential, prevail

**verum (adv.):** however

**vexo, -are, -avi, -atus:** harass

**cum diceret:** causal *cum* clause

**eum ... habiturum (esse):** ind. statement introduced by *diceret*; a simpler order

would be *se nunquam habiturum (esse) eum pro amico ... quem*; i.e., Galeazzo

would not ally with Savoy because the King of France - Milan's ally - considered

Savoy an enemy

**quem ... haberet:** rel. clause of characteristic

**blanditiis et pollicitacionibus:** ablatives of means

**ut ... traxerit:** result clause

**principis sui:** not technically reflexive because not referring to subject, but a sense of  
"his own prince" (i.e. Galeazzo)"

**sui ipsius:** emphatic pronoun added to distinguish from the previous use of the  
reflexive, "of he himself (i.e. Paul)"

**et ... et:** "both ... and"

**Laurentium Pisauriensem:** Lorenzo of Pesaro, Galeazzo's legate

**legatum:** appositive to *Laurentium Pisauriensem*

**exilio:** abl. of means

**Sabaudienses:** substantive adj.

**bello:** abl. of means

**ut ... coegerit:** result clause

**exoscere:** inf. object of *coegerit*

est, intervenientibus et reginae et uxoris Galeacii precibus, quae ducis Sabaudiae sorores sunt.

*Paul and his vice-chamberlain, Vianesio Albergati, put on a lavish Carnival celebration in Rome*

**42** Compositis autem hoc modo rebus, Paulus ad ocium conversus, populo Romano ad imitationem veterum, ludos quam magnificentissimos et epulum lautissimum instituit, procurante eam rem Vianesio Bononiensi pontificis vicecamerario. Ludi autem erant

---

**compono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:**

arrange, settle

**convertor, -verti, -versus sum:** turn

**dux, ducis m.:** leader; duke

**epulum, -i n.:** feast; public banquet

**imitatio, -onis f.:** imitation

**instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** set up

**intervenio, -venire, -veni, -ventus:** intervene

**lautus, -a, -um:** sumptuous, luxurious

**ludus, -i m.:** game

**magnificus, -a, -um:** splendid, magnificent

**modus, -i m.:** manner, way

**ocium, -i (CL otium) n.:** leisure, peace, rest

**pontifex, -ficiis m.:** pontiff, pope

**populus, -i m.:** people

**prex, precis f.:** prayer, request

**procuro, -are, -avi, -atus:** manage; attend to  
**Sabaudia, -ae f.:** Savoy, region in northwest

Italy

**uxor, -oris f.:** wife

**vetus, veteris:** ancient

**vicecamerarius, -i m.:** vice-chamberlain

---

**reginae:** Charlotte of Savoy, wife of Louis XI of France, sister to Louis I, Duke of Savoy

**uxoris Galaecii:** Bona of Savoy, wife of Galeazzo Sforza, sister of Louis I, Duke of Savoy

**intervenientibus ... precibus:** abl. abs. with causal sense, “because of the intervening prayers of the queen and of Galeazzo’s wife”

**Compositis ... rebus:** abl. abs.

**hoc modo:** abl. of manner

**populo Romano:** dat. of advantage

**ad imitationem:** *ad* + acc. often replaces the dat. of CL (see Introduction 7.B); here a dat. of purpose, “as an imitation”

**veterum:** substantive, “the ancients”

**quam magnificentissimos et ... lautissimum:** “as magnificent and ... sumptuous as possible”

**procurante ... Vianesio Bononiensi:** abl. abs.

**Vianesio Bononiensi:** Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, Paul II’s vice-chamberlain, a post which at that time included administration of the city of Rome

pallia octo, quae cursu certantibus in Carnisprivio proponebantur singulis diebus. Currebant senes, adoloscentes, iuvenes, Iudei, ac seorsum pastillis primo quidem pleni quo tardiores in cursu essent. Currebant et equi, equae, asini, bubali tanta cum omnium voluptate, ut omnes prae risu pedibus stare vix possent. Cursus autem et

**adoloscens, -entis** (CL *adulescens*) *m./f.*:

young adult

**asinus, -i** *m.*: ass, donkey

**bubalus, -i** *m.*: antelope, gazelle; wild ox

**Carnisprivium, -i** *n.*: Carnival

**certor, -ari, -atus sum**: compete

**curro, -ere, cucurri, cursus**: run

**cursus, -us** *m.*: running; race

**dies, diei** *m./f.*: day

**equa, -ae** *f.*: mare

**equus, -i** *m.*: horse

**Iudeus, -i** (CL *Iudeus*) *m.*: Jew

**iuvenis, -is** *m./f.*: youth

**octo** (*indecl.*): eight

**pallium, -i** *n.*: coverlet; a race

**pastillus, -i** *m.*: pastry

**pes, pedis** *m.*: foot

**plenus, -a, -um**: full

**prae**: because of (+ *abl.*)

**primo** (*adv.*): at the beginning

**propono, -ponere, -posui, -positus**: propose;

put or place forward

**risus, -us** *m.*: laughter

**senex, senis** *m.*: old man

**seorsum** (*adv.*): separately

**singulus, -a, -um**: individual, each

**sto, -are, steti, status**: stand

**tardus, -a, -um**: slow

**vix** (*adv.*): scarcely

**voluptas, -tatis** *f.*: pleasure, enjoyment

**pallia**: a coverlet given as a prize in races; used metonymically to refer to the race itself

**cursu**: abl. of means

**certantibus**: dat. of ind. obj. with *proponebantur*

**Carnisprivio**: festival of excess preceding Lent

**singulis diebus**: abl. of time when

**Currebant ... essent**: Jews were treated very badly in Rome under the rule of Pope

Paul II. During Carnival they were fed rich meals and forced to run through the streets for the entertainment of the Roman people and the pope

**seorsum ... essent**: refers to *Iudei*, so that the Jews are the ones full with pastries

**quo ... essent**: rel. clause of purpose, “in order that by means of this they might be slower”

**tardiores**: nom. pl. compar. of *tardus*

**tanta cum omnium voluptate**: “with such great pleasure (on the part) of all”

**ut ... possent**: result clause

**Cursus ... et stadium erat**: *erat* is singular due to the nearest noun, *stadium*, but is best translated in the plural “were” to include *cursus*. This route is the modern Corso, which takes its name from these races

stadium erat ab Arcu Domiciani usque ad aedes Sancti Marci, unde pontifex ipse solidam voluptatem percipiebat. Hac etiam in pueros coeno oblitos post cursum munificentia usus, ut singulis carlenum (nummi argentei id genus est) condonaret.

*Paul is warned of a conspiracy between Callimachus (of the Roman Academy) and Luca Tozzoli (an exile in Naples); panic sets in*

**43** Sed ecce in tam publica omnium laetitia subitus terror Paulum occupat. Nunciatur ei quosdam adolescentes duce Calimacho

**adolescens, -entis** (CL *adulescens*) *m./f.:*

young adult

**aedes, aedis** *f.:* temple; house (*pl.*)

**arcus, -us** *m.:* arch

**argenteus, -a, -um:** made of silver

**carlenum, -i** *n.:* a Carlino, a silver coin

**coenum, -i** (CL *caenum*) *n.:* mud

**condono, -are, -avi, -atus:** give (away); make  
a present of

**cursus, -us** *m.:* race

**Domicianus, -i** (CL *Domitianus*) *m.:*

Domitian, Emperor 81-96 CE

**dux, ducis** *m.:* leader

**ecce:** look!

**genus, generis** *n.:* kind

**hac** (*adv.*): here

**laetitia, -ae** (CL *laetitia*) *f.:* joy, happiness

**munificentia, -ae** *f.:* bountifulness,

munificence

**nummus, -i** *m.:* coin

**nuncio, -are, -avi, -atus** (CL *nuntio*):

announce, report

**oblinio, -are, oblinavi, oblitus:** smear over

**occupo, -are, -avi, -atus:** seize; overtake

**percipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptus:** perceive,  
observe; take

**pontifex, -ficus** *m.:* pontiff, pope

**publicus, -a, -um:** public

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** certain

**sanctus, -i** *m.:* saint

**singulus, -a, -um:** each one; individual

**solidus, -a, -um:** full; real

**stadium, -i** *n.:* stadium; race course

**subitus, -a, -um:** sudden

**tam** (*adv.*): so, so much

**terror, -oris** *m.:* terror, panic

**unde** (*adv.*): from where

**usque** (*adv.*): all the way

**utor, uti, usus sum:** use, make use of (+ *abl.*)

**voluptas, -tatis** *f.:* pleasure, enjoyment

**Arcu Domiciani:** the Arch of Domitian; Platina is probably referring to the Arco di Portogallo on the Corso, destroyed in the 17th century

**aedes Sancti Marci:** Palazzo San Marco (now called Palazzo Venezia), the palace Paul built for himself, see fig. 3 (p. 72)

**in:** here, “towards”

**coeno:** abl. of means

**ut ... condonaret:** result clause

**singulis:** dat. of ind. obj. with *condonaret*

**nummi argentei:** partitive gen. dependent on *genus*

**Nunciatur:** impers.

**duce Calimacho:** abl. abs.

**Calimacho:** Filippo Buonaccorsi, also known as Callimachus (1437-1496), a humanist and member of the Roman Academy



FIGURE 3: Palazzo San Marco, also called Palazzo Venezia (photo by authors)

In 1455 Pietro Barbo built the *aedes Sancti Marci* to adjoin the church of San Marco, where he was cardinal priest (see ch. 1). The façade of church is made up of the double rows of three arches at left. While cardinal, Barbo made further improvements, creating the imposing structure whose tower and battlements dominate the square below. In 1564, Pope Pius IV gave the Palazzo San Marco to the Republic of Venice for use as its embassy, after which it became known as the Palazzo “of” Venezia. From 1929 until 1943, the building served as the headquarters for the Fascist Party, and some of Mussolini’s most famous speeches were delivered from a balcony on the second floor (center right).

in eum conspirasse, cui prae timore vix [381] {236R} respiranti nescioquo fato novus etiam terror additur. Advolat enim quidam cognomento Philosophus, homo facinorosus et exul, qui vitam primo et redditum in patriam deprecatus, nunciat, ac falso quidem, Lucam Totium, Romanum civem Neapoli exulanter, cum multis exilibus in nemoribus Veltensis, a se visum ac paulo post affuturum.

**addo, -ere, addidi, additus:** add  
**adsum, adesse, affui, affuturus:** be present  
**advolo, -are, -avi, -atus:** rush forth  
**civis, -is m./f.:** citizen  
**cognomentum, -i n.:** surname  
**conspiro, -are, -avi, -atus:** plot  
**deprecor, -ari, -atus sum:** pray, beg (for)  
**exul, -ulus m./f.:** exile  
**exulo, -are, -avi, -atus:** live in exile  
**facinorosus, -a, -um:** wicked, criminal  
**falso (adv.):** falsely  
**fatum, -i n.:** fate  
**Neapolis, -is f.:** Naples  
**nemus, nemoris n.:** wood  
**nescioquis, nescioquid:** some

**novus, -a, -um:** new  
**nuncio, -are, -avi, -atus (CL *nuntio*):**  
 announce; report  
**patria, -ae f.:** homeland  
**paulo (adv.):** by a little  
**prae:** because of (+ *abl.*)  
**primo (adv.):** at first  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** a certain  
**reditus, -us m.:** return  
**respiro, -are, -avi, -atus:** breathe  
**terror, -oris m.:** terror, panic  
**tum, -oris m.:** fear; dread  
**Veltensis, -a, -um:** of Velletri (a suburb of Rome)  
**vix (adv.):** scarcely

**in eum:** here, “against him”

**conspirasse:** syncopated from *conspera(vi)sse*, inf. in ind. statement introduced by *nunciatur*

**cui:** dat. of ind. obj. with *additur*

**respiranti:** agrees with *cui*

**cognomento:** abl. of respect

**Philosophus:** a Roman named Andreas but known as “Philosophus”

**homo ... exul:** appositives with *Philosophus*

**Lucam Totium:** Luca Tozzoli, an exile in league with the Orsini, a powerful Roman family opposed to Paul

**Neapoli:** locative

**visum (esse):** perf. pass. inf. of *video* in ind. statement introduced by *nunciatur*; acc. subject is *Lucam Totium*

**affuturum (esse):** fut. inf. in ind. statement introduced by *nunciatur*

Timere Paulus ac magis trepidare tum coepit, veritus ne domi et foris opprimeretur.

*In the ensuing panic, many are arrested and jailed; some individuals opportunistically take advantage of the situation*

**44** Capiuntur permulti in urbe, tum ex aulicis, tum ex Romanis. Augebat hominis timorem Vianesius. Agebant [382] et alii eius familiares, qui ex tanta perturbatione aditum ad maiorem dignitatem et uberiorem fortunam sibi quaerebant. Irrumpabant cuiusvis

**aditus, -us m.:** access; opportunity  
**augeo, -ere, auxi, auctus:** increase  
**aulicus, -i m.:** courtier  
**capiro, -ere, cepi, captus:** seize; arrest  
**coepio, -ere, coepi, coepitus:** begin  
**dignitas, -tatis f.:** honor; rank  
**domus, -i f.:** home, household  
**familiaris, -is m./f.:** member of household  
**foris (adv.):** out of doors  
**fortuna, -ae f.:** fortune; circumstances  
**irrumpo, -ere, irrupi, irruptus:** invade;  
  break in  
**magis (adv.):** more  
**oprimo, -primere, -pressi, -pressus:**  
  overwhelm; seize; catch by surprise

**permultus, -a, -um:** very much; very many  
  (*pl.*)  
**perturbatio, -onis f.:** disturbance;  
  commotion  
**quaero, -ere, quaeivi, quaeitus:** seek, strive  
  for  
**quivis, quaevis, quodvis:** whoever, whatever;  
  anyone  
**timeo, -ere, -ui, - :** fear; be afraid  
**timor, -oris m.:** fear; dread  
**trepido, -are, -avi, -atus:** tremble  
**uber, uberis:** rich, abundant  
**urbs, urbis f.:** city  
**vereor, -eri, -itus sum:** fear; dread

**ne ... opprimeretur:** fear clause

**domi:** locative; *domi et foris* is “both at home and abroad”; that is, by Callimachus and the young men in Rome, and by Luca Tozzoli with foreign backers

**tum ... tum:** “both ... and”

**Romanis:** i.e. the non-curiel citizens of Rome

**Augebat hominis timorem Vianesius:** in the manuscripts, Platina had removed this sentence, but then he added it back in before printing

**Vianesius:** Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, vice-chamberlain to Paul II

**maiores:** compar. of *magnus*

**uberiorem:** compar. of *uber*

**sibi:** reflexive, dat. of advantage

**cuiusvis:** gen. sing., “of anyone at all”

domum sine discrimine. Trahebant in carcerem\* quos suspectos coniurationis habuissent\*.

*Platina is arrested and brought before Paul*

**45** Et ne ego tantae calamitatis expers essem, domum ubi habitabam, multis satellitibus noctu circundant, fractis foribus ac fenestris, vi irrumpunt, Demetrium Lucensem familiarem meum comprehendunt; a quo ubi scivere me apud cardinalem Mantuanum

**calamitas, -tatis** *f.*: misfortune, disaster  
**cacer,** *-is* *m.*: prison, jail  
**cardinalis,** *-is* *m.*: cardinal  
**circundo, -dare, -dedi, -datus** (*CL circumdo*): surround  
**comprehendo, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus:** seize; arrest  
**coniuratio, -onis** *f.*: conspiracy, plot  
**discrimen, -minis** *n.*: distinction, discrimination  
**domus, -i** *f.*: home, household  
**expers, expertis:** free from (+ gen.)  
**familiaris, -is** *m./f.*: household servant  
**fenestra, -ae** *f.*: window

**foris, -is** *f.*: door, gate  
**frango, -ere, fregi, fractus:** break, shatter  
**habito, -are, -avi, -atus:** inhabit; live  
**irrumpo, -ere, irrupi, irruptus:** invade, break in  
**Mantuanus, -a, -um:** of Mantua  
**noctu** (*adv.*): at night  
**satelles, -itis** *m./f.*: attendant  
**scisco, -ere, scivi, scitus:** come to know, learn  
**sine:** without (+ *abl.*)  
**suspectus, -a, -um:** suspected (+ *gen.*)  
**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus:** draw, drag  
**ubi** (*adv.*): where; when  
**vis, vis** *f.*: violence, force

**carcerem\* ... habuissent\*:** Platina originally wrote and then later crossed out before printing: *carcerem non quos ... habuissent, sed quos aut ipsi oderant ob aliquam similitatem, aut divellere a complexu coniugum explendae libidinis suae causa cupiebant* (“they dragged into jail not those suspected of conspiracy, but those whom they themselves either hated because of some rivalry, or desired to tear away from the embrace of their spouses for the sake of satisfying their own pleasure.”)  
**ne ... essem:** neg. purpose clause  
**domum:** acc. obj. of *cirdundant*  
**noctu:** abl. of time when, adverbial  
**Demetrium Lucensem:** Demetrius Guazzelli of Lucca, a household member and student of Platina  
**scivere:** alt. form of *sciverunt*  
**cardinalem Mantuanum:** Francesco Gonzaga (1444-1483), Cardinal of Mantua (1461-1483), had helped secure Platina’s release from prison after Platina was accused of treason the first time; see Introduction 2 and ch. 18

cenare, statim accurunt, et me, in cubiculo hominis captum, ad Paulum confestim trahunt.

*Platina denies that Callimachus was contriving a conspiracy*

**46** Qui ubi me vidit: “Ita,” inquit, “duce Calimacho in nos coniurabas?” Tum ego frētus innocentia mea, ita constanti animo respondi ut nullum conscientie signum in me deprehendi posset. Instabat ille discinctus et pallidus, et nisi verum faterer, nunc tormenta mihi, nunc mortem proponebat. Tum ego cum viderem

**accurro, -ere, accurri, accusus:** charge  
**animus, -i m.:** mind; soul  
**capiro, -ere, cepi, captus:** seize; arrest  
**confestim (adv.):** immediately  
**coniuro, -are, -avi, -atus:** conspire, plot  
**conscientia, -ae f.:** knowledge; (guilty) conscience  
**constans, constantis:** steadfast, resolute  
**cubiculum, -i n.:** chamber; apartment  
**ceno, -are, -avi, -atus (CL ceno):** dine  
**deprehendo, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus:** discover; reveal  
**discinctus, -a, -um:** ungirt; half dressed  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader  
**fateor, -eri, fassus sum:** admit, confess (+ acc.)  
**frētus, -a, -um (CL fretus):** relying on, supported by (+abl.)

**innocentia, -ae f.:** innocence  
**inquam, - , - , - :** say  
**insto, -are, institi, - :** pursue, threaten  
**mors, mortis f.:** death  
**nullus, -a, -um:** no; none  
**nunc (adv.):** now  
**pallidus, -a, -um:** pale, yellow-green  
**propono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:** propose  
**respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsus:** respond  
**signum, -i n.:** sign  
**statim (adv.):** immediately  
**tormentum, -i n.:** torture  
**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus:** drag  
**ubi (adv.):** where; when  
**verum, -i n.:** truth

**me ... cenare:** ind. statement introduced by *scire*

**hominis:** = *eius* (see Introduction 7.E), referring to *cardinalem Mantuanum*

**duce Calimacho:** abl. abs.; Callimachus, a member of the Roman Academy accused of leading the conspiracy (ch. 43)

**constanti animo:** abl. of manner

**ut ... posset:** result clause

**conscientie:** gen. sing. (CL *conscientiae*, see Introduction 6.B)

**deprehendi:** pass. inf., complementary with *posset*

**nisi ... faterer:** fut. more vivid cond., expressed in imperf. subj. in virtual ind. statement in secondary sequence, “unless I would confess”

**cum viderem:** circumstantial *cum* clause

omnia armis et tumultu circunsonare, veritus ne quid gravius ob formidinem et iram in nos consuleretur, rationes attuli quam ob rem crederem Calimachum nil aliquid tale unquam moliturum, nedum meditatum fuisse, quod consilio, lingua, manu, solicitudine, opibus, copiis, clientelis, armis, pecuniis, oculis postremo careret. Caeculus enim erat, et P. Lentulo somniculosior, ac L. Crasso ob

---

<b>affero, afferre, attuli, allatus:</b> convey, offer	<b>lingua, -ae f.:</b> tongue; speech
<b>aliquis, aliquid:</b> someone, something;	<b>manus, -us f.:</b> hand; literary skill
anything	<b>meditor, -ari, -atus sum:</b> contemplate, think
<b>arma, -orum n.:</b> weapons	<b>molior, -iri, -itus sum:</b> plan, contrive
<b>caeculus, -a, -um:</b> near blind	<b>nedum (adv.):</b> still less
<b>careo, -ere, -ui, -itus:</b> be without, lack (+ <i>abl.</i> )	<b>nil n. (indecl.):</b> nothing
<b>circunsono, -are, -avi, -atus (CL circumsono):</b> resound on every side	<b>oculus, -i m.:</b> eye
<b>clientela, -ae f.:</b> group of clients	<b>ops, opis f.:</b> power; resources ( <i>pl.</i> )
<b>consilium, -i n.:</b> plan; intelligence	<b>postremo (adv.):</b> finally
<b>consulo, -sulere, -sului, -sultus:</b> deliberate; adopt	<b>ratio, -onis f.:</b> reasoning
<b>copia, -ae f.:</b> abundance; troops ( <i>pl.</i> )	<b>solicitudo, -dinus (CL sollicitudo) f.:</b> concern; responsibility
<b>formido, -dinus f.:</b> fear, terror	<b>somniculosus, -a, -um:</b> sleepy, drowsy
<b>gravis, -e:</b> heavy; serious	<b>talis, -e:</b> so great
<b>ira, -ae f.:</b> anger	<b>tumultus, -us m.:</b> commotion, uproar
	<b>unquam (adv.):</b> ever
	<b>vereor, -eri, -itus sum:</b> fear, dread

---

**omnia ... circunsonare:** ind. statement introduced by *viderem*

**ne ... consuleretur:** fear clause

**quid:** *aliquid*, “something” (after *si*, *nisi*, *num* and *ne*, “ali” takes a holiday)

**gravius:** neut. compar., agrees with *quid*

**quam ob rem crederem:** ind. question

**nil:** here adverbial, “in no way”

**aliquid tale:** “any such thing”

**moliturum (esse):** ind. statement introduced by *crederem*, “that he would contrive”

**meditatum fuisse:** ind. statement coordinated with *moliturum*, acc. obj. of both is  
*aliquid*; “that he (actually) had planned”

**quod ... careret:** “because ...”; *careret* is subjunctive in a subordinate clause in ind.  
statement

**Caeculus:** diminutive of *caecus*; Callimachus was often described by Platina as almost  
blind

**P. Lentulo ... L. Crasso:** abl. of comparison with *somniculosior* and *tardior*; P.  
Cornelius Lentulus Sura and M. Licinius Crassus, two men involved in the  
Catilinarian Conspiracy (Sallust *Cat.* 17), a plot by the senator Catiline to  
overthrow the republic, put down by Cicero in 63 BCE; *lentulus* means slow and  
*crassus* means large; Platina is making a pun on their names

adipem tardior. Omitto quod nec civis quidem Romanus erat qui patriam liberaret, nec praesul qui pontificatum sibi Paulo interempto desumeret. Quid poterat Calimachus? Quid auderet? Eratne lingua et manu promptus? Habebatne ad tantam rem conficiendam certos homines delectos et descriptos, quorum opera uteretur? Nisi forte vellent Glaucum et Petreium, fugae suae comites, alteros Gabinios ac Statilius esse.

**adeps, adipis** *m./f.*: fatness; corpulence  
**audeo, -ere, ausus sum:** dare  
**certus, -a, -um:** trusty  
**civis, -is** *m./f.*: citizen  
**comes, comitis** *m./f.*: comrade, companion  
**conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** accomplish  
**delectus, -a, -um:** chosen  
**descriptus, -a, -um:** organized, arranged  
**desumo, -ere, desumpsi, desumptus:** take  
**forte (adv.):** by chance  
**fuga, -ae f.:** escape; exile  
**interemo, -emere, -emi, -emptus:** kill

**libero, -are, -avi, -atus:** liberate  
**lingua, -ae f.:** tongue; speech  
**manus, -us f.:** hand  
**omitto, -ere, omisi, omissus:** omit; disregard  
**opera, -ae f.:** work, service  
**patria, -ae f.:** homeland  
**pontificatus, -us m.:** pontificate  
**praesul, -is m./f.:** prelate  
**promptus, -a, -um:** ready, quick  
**tardus, -a, -um:** slow  
**utor, uti, usus sum:** use, enjoy (+ *abl.*)  
**volo, velle, volui, -:** wish, want

**quod:** introducing a substantive clause, “the fact that”

**nec ... nec:** neither ... nor

**qui ... liberaret, qui ... desumeret:** rel. clauses of characteristic

**poterat:** “capable of”

**Quid auderet:** deliberative, “what would he have dared?”

**Eratne ... Habebatne:** *-ne* attached to first word of a sentence to indicate a question

**lingua et manu:** abls. of respect; referring to speech and action

**ad tantam rem conficiendam:** *ad* + acc. gerundive expressing purpose, “in order for such a thing to be accomplished (i.e. to accomplish such a thing)”

**quorum ... uteretur:** rel. clause of characteristic

**vellent ... esse:** potential subjunctive followed by ind. statement, “they would wish that Glaucus and Petreius be another set of Gabinii and Statiliii”

**Glaucum:** Lucio Condulmoro, member of the Roman Academy and friend of Callimachus; he took the ancient name “Glaucus”

**Petreium:** Pietro Marso, member of the Roman Academy

**comites:** appositive with *Glaucum et Petreium*

**Gabinios ac Statilius:** P. Gabinius Capito and Statilius, two of the Catilinarian conspirators (Sall. *Cat.* 17)

*Paul calls for Platina to be tortured and imprisons him in Castel Sant'Angelo*

**47** Tum Paulus ad Vianesium conversus: “Hic,” inquit (me torvis oculis aspiciens), “tormento cogendus est verum fateri; nam coniurandi artem optime novit.” \*Utinam consideratius mecum egisset Paulus\*; non enim me statim tormento subiecisset. Nam cum verum coniectura quaeritur nec de facto constat, in coniuratione potissimum, et quae ante susceptum negocium et post sint gesta,

**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** act

**ars, artis f.:** skill, art

**aspicio, -ere, aspexi, aspectus:** look

**bene (adv.):** well

**cogo, -ere, coegi, coactus:** force, compel

**coniuratio, -onis f.:** conspiracy, plot

**coniuro, -are, -avi, -atus:** conspire, plot

**coniectura, -ae (CL coniectura) f.:** conjecture

**considerate (adv.):** thoughtfully, maturely

**consto, -stare, -stiti, -status:** to stand; be established

**convertor, -verti, -versus sum:** turn

**factum, -i n.:** fact

**fateor, -eri, fassus sum:** admit, confess

**gero, -ere, gessi, gestus:** carry; accomplish

**inquam, - , - , - :** say

**negocium, -i (CL negotium) n.:** trouble;

business

**nosco, -ere, novi, notus:** learn

**oculus, -i m.:** eye

**potissimum (adv.):** chiefly, especially

**quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus:** seek; ask

**statim (adv.):** immediately

**subicio, -icere, -iceti (CL subieci), -iectus:** subject

**suscipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptus (CL susceptus):** undertake; take up

**tormentum, -i n.:** torture

**torvus, -a, -um:** pitiless; wild; piercing

**utinam:** if only, would that

**verum, -i n.:** truth

**Vianesium:** Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, vice-chamberlain to Paul II

**Hic ... cogendus est:** pass. periphrastic, “He must be forced”

**tormento:** dat. of agent with pass. periphrastic

**coniurandi:** gen. gerund, “of conspiring”

**optime:** superl. of *bene*

**novit:** “has learned,” therefore, “knows”

\***Utinam ... egisset Paulus\*:** optative subjunctive, “If only ... Paul had acted”;

Platina originally wrote a different phrase, which he crossed out before printing: *Utinam Paulus aliquando rhetorican didicisset* (“If only Paul had at some point learned rhetoric”); the implication is that Paul did not understand Platina’s references to the Catilinarian conspiracy and his puns highlighting Callimachus’s harmlessness

**consideratius:** compar. of *considerate*

**subiecisset:** potential subjunctive

**cum ... quaeritur ... constat:** temporal *cum* clause

**coniectura:** abl. of origin, “from conjecture”

**constat:** impers.

**quae ... sint gesta:** ind. question “what things were done before the business was taken up, and after”

quaeritur. Consideratur vita coniurantis; considerantur mores, ambitio, cupiditas tum facultatum tum honorum, et si quid antea dictum, scriptum, aut factum sit, quod eo tendat. Horum {236v} nihil consideravit Paulus; in carcerem nos coniicit.

*Paul learns that Luca Tozzoli never left Naples*

[383] 48 Verum cum admoneretur ab his qui bene sentiebant, quibusque exploratum erat, Lucam Totium nusquam pedem Neapoli

**admoneo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** advise

**ambitio, -onis f.:** ambition

**bene (adv.):** well

**carcer, -eris m.:** prison, jail

**conicio, -iicere, -ici, -iectus:** throw

**coniuro, -are, -avi, -atus:** conspire, plot

**considero, -are, -avi, -atus:** examine;

investigate

**cupiditas, -tatis f.:** passion, ambition

**eo (adv.):** there, in that direction

**exploro, -are, -avi, -atus:** investigate, confirm

**facultas, -tatis f.:** capability; resources (*pl.*)

**honor, -oris m.:** honor; office

**mos, moris m.:** habit; (*pl.*) morals, character

**nusquam (adv.):** nowhere; on no occasion

**pes, pedis m.:** foot

**quaero, -ere, quaeſivi, quaeſitus:** seek, ask

**scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptus:** write

**sentio, -ire, sensi, sensus:** understand

**tendo, -ere, tetendi, tensus:** extend, tend

**verum (adv.):** but; however

**quaeritur:** impers.

**mores, ambitio, cupiditas:** subjects of *considerantur*

**tum ... tum:** “both ... and”

**facultatum ... honorum:** obj. genitives

**si ... dictum (sit), scriptum (sit), aut factum sit:** ind. quest., “if anything before has been said, written, or done”

**si quid:** “if anything” (after *si*, *nisi*, *num* and *ne*, “*ali*” takes a holiday)

**quod eo tendat:** rel. clause of characteristic, “which might extend to that (i.e. that looks that way)”

**Horum:** partitive gen.

**cum admoneretur:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**quibusque:** abl. of agent, the *-que* coordinates with *ab his*

**exploratum erat:** impers.

**Lucam Totium ... movisse:** ind. statement introduced by *admoneretur*; acc. obj.

is *pedem*; Luca Tozzoli was rumored to be waiting outside Rome with troops to overthrow the pope

**Neapoli:** abl. of place from which

movisse, ne tantum tumultum cum suo discrimine concitaret, revocat edictum tertio die quo proemia illis proponebat, qui Lucam reum maiestatis, vel vivum vel mortuum, in potestatem suam redēgissent; non tamen Quadratios fratres, quos ob eam suspicionem cēperat et torserat, dimisit. Subesse aliquam latentem causam videri volebat, ne levitatis argueretur.

<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod:</b> some	<b>potestas, -tatis f.:</b> power
<b>arguo, -ere, -ui, -utus:</b> prove, accuse (+ gen.)	<b>proemium , -i (CL <i>praemium</i>) n.:</b> prize; reward
<b>capiro, -ere, cepi (CL <i>cepi</i>), captus:</b> seize; arrest	<b>propono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:</b> propose
<b>concito, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> stir up; cause	<b>redigo, -ere, redēgi (CL <i>redegī</i>), redactus:</b> drive back; render
<b>dies, diei m./f.:</b> day	<b>reus, -a, -um m.:</b> guilty, accused
<b>dimitto, -ere, dimisi, dimissus:</b> send away, release	<b>revoco, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> call back
<b>discrimen, -minis n.:</b> crisis, danger	<b>subsum, -esse, -fui, - : </b> be underneath
<b>edictum, -i n.:</b> proclamation; edict	<b>suspicio, -onis f.:</b> suspicion
<b>latens, latentis:</b> hidden; secret	<b>tertius -a -um:</b> third
<b>levitas, -tatis f.:</b> levity; fickleness	<b>torqueo, -ere, torsī, tortus:</b> torture
<b>maiestas, -tatis f.:</b> greatness; high treason	<b>tumultus, -us m.:</b> commotion; disturbance
<b>mortuus, -a, -um:</b> dead	<b>vivus, -a, -um:</b> alive
<b>moveo, -ere, movi, motus:</b> move	<b>volo, velle, volui, - : </b> wish, want

**ne ... concitaret:** neg. purpose clause

**cum suo discrimine:** “with his own danger (i.e. with danger to himself)”

**revocat:** subject is *Paulus* from the previous sentence

**tertio die:** abl. of time when

**quo:** “from (that day) on which”

**illis:** dat. of ind. obj. with *proponebat*

**qui ... redēgissent:** rel. clause of characteristic, “who would have rendered”; antecedent is *illis*

**Quadratios fratres:** other members of the Roman Academy

**videri:** pass. inf. in ind. statement, “seem”

**ne ... argueretur:** neg. purpose clause

Vianesio tortures many humanists

**49** Liberatus hoc metu Paulus ad nos statim animum adiicit. Mittit in arcem Hadriani Vianesium cum Iohanne Francisco, Clugiensi Sanga, et satellite, qui nos quovis genere tormentorum adigat ea etiam fateri quae nusquam sciebamus. Torquentur prima et sequenti die multi, quorum pars magna p[ro]ae dolore in ipsis cruciatibus concidit. Bovem Phalaridis sepulchrum Hadriani tum

**adigo, -ere, adegi, adactus:** force  
**adiicio, -ere, adieci, adiectus:** add; apply  
**animus, -i m.:** mind  
**arx, arcis f.:** citadel; stronghold  
**bos, bovis m./f.:** bull  
**Clugiensis, -e:** of Chiozza  
**concidō, -cidere, -cidi, - :** fall down, collapse;  
 faint  
**cruciatus, -us m.:** torture device  
**dies, diei m./f.:** day  
**dolor, -oris m.:** pain, suffering  
**fateor, -eri, fassus sum:** admit, confess (+ acc.)  
**genus, -eris n.:** kind, sort  
**libero, -are, -avi, -atus:** free; liberate

**metus, -us m.:** fear, anxiety  
**nusquam (adv.):** on no occasion  
**pars, partis f.:** part  
**prae:** because of (+ abl.)  
**primus, -a, -um:** first  
**quivis, quaevis, quodvis:** any, whatever  
**satelles, -itis m./f.:** attendant  
**scio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** know  
**sepulchrum, -i n.:** grave, tomb  
**sequens, sequentis:** following; next  
**statim (adv.):** immediately  
**tormentum, -i n.:** torture  
**torqueo, -ere, torsi, tortus:** torture

**hoc metu:** abl. of separation

**arcem Hadriani:** the Mausoleum of Hadrian, now called the Castel Sant'Angelo, see fig. 4 (p. 83)

**Hadriani:** Hadrian, Roman Emperor (r. 117-138 CE)

**Vianesium:** Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, vice-chamberlain to Pope Paul II

**Iohanne Francisco, Clugiensi Sanga:** Giovanni Francesco and Sanga of Chiozzo, Vianesio's assistants

**qui ... adigat:** rel. clause of purpose dependent on *mittit*

**fateri:** inf. obj. of *adigat*; acc. subj. is *nos* and acc. obj. is *ea*

**prima et sequenti die:** abl. of time when

**multi:** subject of *torquentur*, substantive

**quorum:** partitive gen.

**Bovem Phalaridis:** a bronze bull in which the tyrant Phalaris roasted people alive

**(esse) sepulchrum Hadriani:** Castel Sant'Angelo, the fortress built onto Hadrian's Mausoleum



FIGURE 4: Castel Sant'Angelo (photo by authors)

The structure that Platina calls the *arx Hadriani* (ch. 28 and 49), the *sepulchrum Hadriani* (ch. 49), and the *moles Hadriani* (ch. 59) was originally built as a mausoleum for the emperor Hadrian (r. 117-138) and his descendants. Only the lower portion of the drum-shaped structure dates back to this early time. The mausoleum was subsequently built into a fortress for the popes, who used it both for defense and for incarceration. (Before Paul II imprisoned the humanists there, he also used it to jail Francesco, son of Count Everso (ch. 28).) The name Castel Sant'Angelo goes back to a tradition about the Archangel Michael appearing above the structure and sheathing his sword at the end of a plague. This photo is taken from the bridge on which Platina observed Paul II standing with the Holy Roman Emperor in ch. 59.

putasses, adeo resonabat fornix ille concavus vocibus miserorum adolescentum. Torquebatur Lucidus homo omnium innocentissimus. Torquebatur Marsus, Demetrius, Augustinus, Campanus optimus adolescens et unicum saeculi nostri decus, si ingenium et litteraturam inspicis; quibus cruciatibus et dolore animi mortuum postea crediderim.

**adeo** (*adv.*): to such an extent  
**adolescens, -entis** (CL *adulescens*) *m./f.*:  
 young adult  
**animus, -i** *m.*: mind; soul  
**concavus, -a, -um**: hollow  
**cruciatus, -us** *m.*: cruelty; torture  
**decus, decoris** *n.*: glory  
**dolor, -oris** *m.*: pain, suffering  
**fornix, -icis** *m.*: arch, vault, cellar  
**ingenium, -i** *n.*: nature; talent  
**innocens, innocentis**: harmless, innocent

**inspicio, -ere, inspexi, inspectus**: consider,  
 inspect  
**litteratura, -ae** *f.*: writing; scholarship  
**miser, -a, -um**: miserable, wretched  
**postea** (*adv.*): afterwards  
**resono, -are, -avi, -atus**: resound  
**saeculum, -i** *n.*: age; generation  
**torqueo, -ere, torsi, tortus**: torture  
**unicus, -a, -um**: only, sole, unique  
**vox, vocis** *f.*: voice

**putasses**: syncopated from *puta(vi)sses*, potential subjunctive, “you would have thought”

**Lucidus**: Marco Lucido Fazini

**homo**: functioning as a rel. pronoun

**omnium**: partitive gen.

**Marsus, Demetrius, Augustinus, Campanus**: Pietro Marso, Demetrio Guazzelli, Agostino Maffei, Antonio Settimuleio Campano; friends of Platina

**optimus**: superl. of *bonus*

**unicum ... decus**: appositive to *Campanus*, as is *optimus adolescens*

**si ... inspicis**: protasis in a simple cond. with the apodosis elided

**quibus cruciatibus et dolore**: abl. of means

**mortuum (esse)**: ind. statement introduced by *crediderim*; subject is an assumed *eum* (Campano)

**crediderim**: potential subjunctive, sense of “I believe (if I’m not mistaken)”

*Vianesio tortures Platina*

**50** Fessi tortores non tamen satiati. Nam ad viginti fere eo biduo questioni subiecerant; me quoque ad poenam vocant. Accingunt se operi carnifices; parantur tormenta; spolior, laceror, trudor tanquam crassator et latro. Sedet Vianesius tanquam alter Minos stratis tapetibus, ac si in nuptiis esset, vel potius in coena Atrei et Tantali.

<b>accingo, -ingere, -inxi, -inctus:</b> equip (oneself)
<b>biduum, -i n.:</b> two days
<b>carnifex, -ficus m.:</b> butcher, torturer
<b>coena, -ae (CL cena) f.:</b> dinner; meal
<b>crassator, -oris (CL grassator) m.:</b> rioter; robber
<b>fere (adv.):</b> almost, nearly
<b>fessus, -a, -um:</b> tired
<b>lacero, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> whip
<b>latro, -onis m.:</b> bandit
<b>nuptia, -ae f.:</b> wedding ( <i>pl.</i> )
<b>opus, operis n.:</b> work
<b>paro, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> prepare
<b>poena, -ae f.:</b> punishment

<b>potius (adv.):</b> rather
<b>questio, -onis (CL quaestio) f.:</b> questioning
<b>satio, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> satisfy, satiate
<b>sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessus:</b> sit
<b>spolio, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> strip
<b>sterno, -ere, stravi, stratus:</b> spread, strew
<b>subicio, -icere, -iēci (CL subieci), -iectus:</b> throw under; subject
<b>tanquam (CL tamquam):</b> just as
<b>tapes, -etis m.:</b> coverlet
<b>tormentum, -i n.:</b> torture device
<b>tortor, -oris m.:</b> torturer
<b>trudo, -ere, trusi, trusus:</b> push, shove, beat
<b>viginti (indecl.):</b> twenty
<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> call

**satiati (sunt):** perf. pass.

**ad viginti:** *ad* + a number expresses approximation, “about twenty (humanists)”;  
direct obj. of *subiecerant*

**eo biduo:** abl. of time within which

**subiecerant:** to subject something (direct obj. here *ad viginti* rather than an acc.) to  
something (here dat. *questioni*)

**ad poenam:** *ad* + acc. expressing purpose, “for punishment”

**carnifices:** subject of *Accingunt*

**Vianesius:** Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, vice-chamberlain to Pope Paul II

**Minos:** mythical king of Crete, judge of the dead in the underworld

**ac si ... esset:** *ac si* “as if”; pres. contrafactual cond. clause of comparison

**Atreui:** Atreus, mythical ruler of Mycenae, grandson of Tantalus, murdered his nephews and fed them to their father

**Tantali:** Tantalus, mythical ruler of Mycenae who tried to feed his son Pelops to the gods

Homo, inquam, sacris initiatus, et quem sacri canones vetant de laicis questionem habere: ne si mors subsequatur, quod in tormentis interdum accidere solet, irregularis (ut eorum verbo utar) et impius habeatur.

*Vianesio questions Platina about Callimachus's alleged conspiracy, about why Pomponio Leto called him 'Holiest Father,' and about whether he had written to any princes to call a council*

**51** Neque hoc quidem contentus, dum penderem miser in ipsis cruciatibus, [384] monilia Sangae Clugiensis attractans, hominem rogabat a qua puella donum amoris habuisset. De amoribus locutus,

**accidit, -ere, accidit, accusus est (impers.):**

happens

**amor, -oris m.:** love; love affairs (*pl.*)

**atrecto, -are, -avi, -atus:** handle

**canon, -onis m.:** canon, law

**Clugiensis, -e:** of Chiozza

**contentus, -a, -um:** content, satisfied (+ *abl.*)

**cruciatus, -us m.:** torture device

**donum, -i n.:** gift; offering

**impious, -a, -um:** wicked, impious

**initio, -are, -avi, -atus:** initiate

**inquam, - , - , - :** say

**interdum (adv.):** sometimes

**irregularis, -e:** irregular; contrary to Church rule

**laicus, -i m.:** layman, one not belonging to

the priesthood

**loquor, loqui, locutus sum:** speak

**miser, misera, miserum:** miserable, wretched

**monile, -lis n.:** necklace

**mors, mortis f.:** death

**pendero, -ere, pependi, - :** hang

**questio, -onis (CL *quaestio*) f.:** questioning

**sacer, sacra, sacrum:** sacred, holy

**sacrum, -i n.:** sacrifice; religious rites (*pl.*)

**soleo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** to be accustomed

**subsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum:** follow

**tormentum, -i n.:** torture

**utor, uti, usus sum:** use (+ *abl.*)

**verbum, -i n.:** word

**veto, -are, -avi, -atus:** forbid, prohibit

**vetant ... habere:** *veto* takes an obj. inf., “forbid him to hold an investigation of laymen”

**de laicis:** “concerning (i.e. over) laymen”

**ne ... habeatur:** neg. purpose clause, “lest he be considered”

**accidere solet:** *solet* + inf., “is accustomed to happen”

**ut ... utar:** purpose clause

**contentus ... rogabat:** subject is Vianesio

**dum penderem:** *dum* + imperf. subjunctive as “while” (see Introduction 7.C)

**miser:** adjectives in nom. often best translated adverbially, “miserably”

**Sangae Clugiensis:** Sanga of Chiozza, assistant of Vianesio

**a qua ... habuisset:** ind. question

ad me conversus instabat ut seriem coniurationis, vel fabulae potius a Calimacho confictae explicarem, diceremque quid causae esset, cur Pomponius, qui tum Venetiis erat, ad me scribens, patrem sanctissimum in suis litteris appellaret: “Te,” inquit, “pontificem creaverant coniurati omnes?” Flagitat item, dederimne litteras Pomponio ad imperatorem, aut ad aliquem Christianum principem suscitandi scismatis aut concilii causa?

---

**aliqui, -qua, -quod:** some  
**appello, -are, -avi, -atus:** call  
**Christianus, -a, -um:** Christian  
**concilium, -i n.:** council  
**confingo, -fingere, -finxi, -fictus:** fabricate; invent  
**coniuratio, -onis f.:** conspiracy  
**coniuratus, -i m.:** conspirator  
**convertor, -verti, -versus sum:** turn  
**creo, -are, -avi, -atus:** create; elect  
**cur (adv.):** why  
**explico, -are, -avi, -atus:** explain  
**fabula, -ae f.:** story, fable  
**flagito, -are, -avi, -atus:** demand urgently

**imperator, -oris m.:** emperor; Holy Roman Emperor  
**inquam, - , - :** say  
**insto, -are, institi, - :** insist  
**item (adv.):** likewise  
**litterae, -arum f.:** a letter (epistle)  
**pontifex, -ficus m.:** pontiff, pope  
**potius (adv.):** rather  
**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader, prince  
**sanctus, -a, -um:** sacred, holy  
**scisma, -atis n.:** schism  
**scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptus:** write  
**series, seriei f.:** series, order of events  
**suscito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up; kindle  
**Venetiae, -arum f.:** Venice

---

**Calimacho:** Callimachus, a member of the Roman Academy who was accused of leading the conspiracy  
**ut ... explicarem, diceremque:** ind. command  
**quid ... esset:** ind. question  
**causae:** partitive gen., “what of a reason (i.e. what reason)”  
**cur ... appellaret:** ind. question  
**Pomponius:** Pomponio Leto, humanist and founder of the Roman Academy  
**Venetiis:** locative  
**patrem sanctissimum:** a term reserved for the pope  
**dederimne:** subjunctive in ind. question, *-ne* (enclitic) attached to first word of a sentence to indicate a question, “whether I gave”  
**suscitandi scismatis ... causa:** *causa* + gen. gerundive expressing purpose, “for the sake of a schism to be stirred up (i.e. to stir up a schism)”

*Platina denies all charges: he did not even like Callimachus, he cannot speak for Pomponio Leto, and he sent no letters*

**52** Respondeo me nunquam consiliorum Calimachi participem fuisse, quippe cum inter nos simultas esset haud parva. Nescire item cur Pomponius me patrem sanctissimum appellaret, sciturum ab eo; nam paulo post vinctum {237R} affuturum dicebat. De pontificatu vero non esse cur solliciti essent, quod vita privata semper contentus

**adsum, adesse, affui, affuturus:** be present;  
arrive  
**appello, -are, -avi, -atus:** call  
**consilium, -i n.:** plan  
**contentus, -a, -um:** content, satisfied (+ *abl.*)  
**cur (adv.):** why  
**haud (adv.):** not at all, no  
**item (adv.):** likewise  
**nescio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** to not know  
**nunquam (adv.):** never  
**particeps, -cipis m./f.:** sharer, partaker  
**paulo (adv.):** a little

**pontificatus, -us m.:** pontificate, the office of  
pontifex  
**privatus, -a, -um:** private; not in public office  
**quippe (adv.):** indeed, as you see  
**respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsus:**  
respond  
**sanctus, -a, -um:** sacred, holy  
**scio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** know  
**simultas, -tatis f.:** enmity; hatred  
**solicitus, -a, -um (CL *sollicitus*):** concerned,  
anxious  
**vero (adv.):** in fact, truly  
**vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctus:** bind

**me ... fuisse:** ind. statement

**Calimachi:** Callimachus, a member of the Roman Academy accused of leading the conspiracy

**cum ... esset:** causal *cum* clause

**Nescire:** ind. statement introduced by *respondeo*

**cur ... appellaret:** ind. question

**Pomponius:** Pomponio Leto, founder of the Roman Academy

**scituru(m) (esse) ab eo:** “he (Vianesio) would know this from him (Pomponius)”

**affuturu(m) (esse) dicebat:** “he (Vianesio) was saying that he (Pomponius) would be present”

**De pontificatu ... esse:** ind. statement introduced by *respondeo*, “That truly concerning the pontificate there was no (reason) why”

**cur ... essent:** ind. question “why they should be concerned (with me)”

**quod ... fuissem:** subordinate clause within ind. statement, “because I had always been”

fuissem. Ad imperatorem vero me nunquam litteras misisse, nec Pomponii opera ea in re usum esse, id etiam ab eo sciturum.

*Platina is asked about his dealings with Sigismondo Malatesta; the questioning ends, but more torment is promised*

**53** Tandem vero delinitus aliquantulum tot meis cruciatibus, non tamen satiatus, deponi me iubet, vesperi maiores subitum. Deferor in cubiculum semimortuus; nec ita multo post revocor a uestoribus bene potis et pransis, aderat et Laurentius archiepiscopus

**adsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:** be present  
**aliquantulum (adv.):** some little bit  
**archiepiscopus, -i m.:** archbishop  
**bene (adv.):** well  
**cruciatus, -us m.:** torture  
**cubiculum, -i n.:** chamber  
**defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus:** carry down  
**delinio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** soothe  
**depono, -ere, deposui, depositus:** let down  
**imperator, -oris m.:** general; Holy Roman Emperor  
**iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussus:** order  
**litterae, -arum f.:** a letter (epistle)  
**multo (adv.):** much  
**nunquam (CL numquam) (adv.):** never  
**opera, -ae f.:** work, service

**poto, -are, potavi, potus:** drink; (*pass.*) be filled with drink  
**prandeo, -ere, prandi, pransus:** eat; (*pass.*) be filled with food  
**uestor, -oris (CL *quaestor*) m.:** questioner  
**revoco, -are, -avi, -atus:** recall  
**satio, -are, -avi, -atus:** satisfy, sate  
**scio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** know  
**semimortuus, -a, -um:** half-dead  
**subeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** endure  
**tandem (adv.):** finally  
**tot (indecl.):** so many  
**utor, uti, usus sum:** use, enjoy (+ *abl.*)  
**vero:** but, however  
**vesperi (adv.):** in the evening

**me ... misisse ... usum esse ... sciturum (esse):** ind. statement introduced by *respondeo*

**id:** refers to the previous clause

**deponi:** obj. inf. (pres. *pass.*) with *iubet*, “that I be let down”; the torture was the strappado: hanging from one’s hands, tied behind the back

**maiores:** acc. pl. compar. of *magnus*, substantive “greater (tortures)”

**subitum (esse):** obj. inf. (fut. act.) with *iubet*, “that I undergo”

**uestoribus:** in classical times, the *quaestor* was a public official in charge of financial affairs, in this context, it is an interrogator

**potis et pransis:** agreeing with *uestoribus*

**Laurentius archiepiscopus Spalatrensis:** Lorenzo Zanni, Archbishop of Split (1452-1473)

Spalatrensis. Petunt quid mihi colloquii fuerit cum Sigismundo Malatesta, qui tum in urbe erat. “De litteris,” inquam, “de armis, de praestantibus ingeniis tum veterum tum nostrorum hominum loquebamur, deque his rebus, quae in hominum colloquia cadere possunt.” Minari tum Vianesius ac maiores cruciatus proponere, nisi verum faterer. Rediturum se die sequenti; meditarer interim ubi essem et quibuscum mihi esset agendum.

**ago, -ere, egi, actus:** do, act; deal

**arma, -orum n.:** arms

**cado, -ere, cecidi, casus:** fall; occur

**colloquium, -i n.:** conversation

**cruciatus, -us m.:** torture

**dies, diei m.f.:** day

**fateor, -eri, fassus sum:** admit, confess

**ingenium, -i n.:** nature; talent

**inquam, - , - , - : say**

**interim (adv.):** in the meantime

**litterae, -arum f.:** literature

**loquor, loqui, locutus sum:** speak

**meditor, -ari, -atus sum:** consider, think

**minor, -ari, -atus sum:** threaten

**peto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** seek

**praestans, praestantis:** excellent

**propono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:** propose

**redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** return

**sequens, sequentis:** next

**Spalat(r)ensis, -e:** of Split, in modern Croatia

**ubi (adv.):** where; when

**verum, -i n.:** truth

**vetus, veteris:** ancient; the ancients (*pl.*)

**quid ... fuerit:** ind. question

**quid ... colloquii:** partitive gen., “what (of) conversation”

**mihi:** dat. of the possessor, “I had”

**Sigismondo Malatesta:** Sigismondo Pandolfo Malatesta (1417-1468), Prince of

Rimini, powerful *condottiero*, patron of the arts, and sometimes enemy of Paul II.

Vianesio suspected Malatesta’s involvement in the alleged conspiracy

**tum ... tum ....:** “both ... and”

**deque:** *de* with the enclitic *-que*

**in ... colloquia cadere:** “fall into people’s conversations (i.e. happen in people’s conversations)”

**Minari ... proponere:** historic inf., “began to threaten and to propose”

**maiores:** compar. of *magnus*, agrees with *cruciatus*

**nisi ... faterer:** fut. more vivid cond., expressed in imperf. subjunctive in virtual ind. statement in secondary sequence, “unless I would confess”

**Rediturum (esse):** inf. in implicit ind. statement (Vianesio still speaking)

**die sequenti:** abl. of time when

**meditarer:** potential subj. with implied command, “I might consider”

**ubi essem:** ind. question

**quibuscum ... agendum:** subjunctive pass. periphrastic in ind. question “with whom it had to be dealt by me (i.e. with whom I had to deal)”

**mihi:** dat. of agent with pass. periphrastic

*Back in his cell, Platina is cared for by Angelo and Marcello del Bufalo, who had been jailed for a murder relating to a feud*

**54** Reducor iterum ad cubile ubi tantus me repente dolor invasit, ut vitam cum morte cuperem commutare; recrudescentibus doloribus ob refrigerata membra, quassa vehementer ac laesa. Recreabat me tamen [385] non parum Angeli Bufali Romani equitis humanitas, quem anno ante Paulus in carcerem coniecerat, ob interfectum a Marcello filio Franciscum Cappocium. Id enim factum Angeli suasu

**annus, -i m.:** year

**carcer, -eris m.:** prison

**commuto, -are, -avi, -atus:** exchange

**conicio, -icere, -iēci (CL *conieci*), -iectus:**  
throw

**cubile, -lis n.:** bed

**cupio, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** desire

**dolor, -oris m.:** pain; grief

**eques, equitis m.:** knight

**fio, feri, factus sum:** happen, come about

**humanitas, -tatis f.:** kindness

**interficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:** kill

**invado, -ere, invasi, invasus:** enter

**iterum (adv.):** again

**laedo, -ere, laesi, laesus:** wound

**membrum, -i n.:** limb

**mors, mortis f.:** death

**parum (adv.):** very little

**quatio, -ere, - , quassus:** shake

**recreo, -are, -avi, -atus:** restore; revive

**recrudesco, -ere, recrudui, - :** break out

again

**reduco, -ere, reduxi, reductus:** lead back

**refrigero, -are, -avi, -atus:** cool, become cold

**repente (adv.):** suddenly, unexpectedly

**susus, -us m.:** advice

**ubi (adv.):** where; when

**vehementer (adv.):** vehemently

**ut ... cuperem:** result clause

**recrudescentibus doloribus:** abl. abs.

**quassa ... laesa:** both participles agree with *membra*

**Angeli Bufali:** possessive gen.; Angelo del Bufalo, knighted by Paul II in 1464, accused of being an accomplice of his son Marcello in the murder of Francesco Cappocio

**Romani equitis:** appositive to *Angeli ... Bufali*

**anno:** abl. of degree of difference

**ob interfectum ... Franciscum Cappocium:** “because of Francesco having been killed by ...” Platina had originally written a relative clause adding that Francesco “had committed adultery with his (Marcellus’s) wife” (*qui eius uxori stuprum intul-erat*); the phrase can still be read in A, but Platina later crossed it out very heavily in V and F

**Marcello filio:** Marcello del Bufalo, son of Angelo, was accused of murdering Francesco Cappocio because Francesco had slept with Marcello’s wife and then mocked him with gestures *variis atque diversis* (according to Gaspar of Verona *De Gestis Pauli II* p. 45 Zippel)

**Franciscum Cappocium:** Francesco Cappocio, a noble Roman murdered by Marcello del Bufalo

**factum (esse):** perf. pass. inf. in ind. statement introduced by *dicebat*

Paulus dicebat. Angelus itaque ac Franciscus nepos, quibuscum in eodem cubiculo divertebam, quominus doloribus et inedia morerer, suis manibus et medelas et cibum mihi afferebant.

*Paul's doctor tells Platina that he will be freed soon; instead, Paul charges him with heresy*

**55** Post biduum vero Christophorus Veronensis Pauli medicus ad me veniens, “Bono,” inquit, “animo te esse iubet Paulus ac de se bene sperare, brevique liberum futurum.” Sciscitor quando id fore speraret. Respondet homo liber audientibus omnibus qui tum aderant, non

**adsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:** be present  
**affero, afferre, attuli, allatus:** bring to, offer  
**animus, -i m.:** mind; heart  
**audio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** hear, listen  
**bene (adv.):** well  
**biduum, -i n.:** two days  
**brevi (adv.):** in a short time  
**cibus, -i m.:** food  
**cubiculum, -i n.:** chamber  
**diverto, -ere, diverti, diversus:** lodge  
**dolor, -oris m.:** pain, anguish  
**inedia, -ae f.:** fasting, starvation  
**inquam, - , - , - :** say  
**iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussus:** order, bid

**liber, libera, liberum:** free  
**manus, -us f.:** hand  
**medela, -ae f.:** medical healing  
**medicus, -i m.:** doctor, physician  
**nepos, -otis m./f.:** nephew  
**quando (adv.):** when  
**quominus:** that not  
**respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsus:**  
 answer  
**sciscitor, -ari, -atus sum:** ask  
**spero, -are, -avi, -atus:** hope  
**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact  
**Veronensis, -e:** of Verona

**Franciscus:** Francesco, nephew of Angelo del Bufalo (different from Francesco Cappocio)

**quibuscum ... divertebam:** “with whom I was lodging in the same chamber”

**quominus ... morerer:** 1<sup>st</sup> sing. imperf. subjunctive in prevention clause dependent on *afferebant*

**Christophorus Veronensis:** Christopher of Verona, Paul II's personal doctor

**Bono ... animo:** abl. of description, “(be) of good heart”

**esse ... sperare:** *iubet* takes inf.

**(te) liberum futurum (esse):** ind. statement with implied *dicit Paulus* following *brevique*

**quando ... speraret:** ind. question

**fore:** alt. form of *futurum esse*, fut. inf. in ind. statement introduced by *speraret*

**liber:** adjectives in nom. often best translated adverbially, “freely”

**audientibus omnibus:** abl. abs.

**non ... posse:** ind. statement introduced by *Respondet*

ita cito fieri posse, ne levitatis et scaevitiae argueretur pontifex, quod illos, quos tanto tumultu concitato cepisset ac torsisset, statim veluti innoxios dimitteret. Neque hoc quidem contentus Paulus, quos paulo ante coniurationis et maiestatis accersierat, eosdem mutata sententia ob divulgatam fabulam haereseos accusat.

*Pomponio Leto is extradited from Venice and faces questions about his use of ancient (pre-Christian) names*

**56** Trahitur ad urbem Pomponius [386] Venetiis captus; per totam Italiam, tanquam alter Iugurtha, ducitur in iudicium

**accerso, -ere, -ivi(ii), -itus:** summon; accuse  
**accuso, -are, -avi, -atus:** accuse, charge (+ gen.)  
**arguo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** accuse (+ gen.)  
**capiro, -ere, cepi** (CL *cepi*), **captus:** arrest, capture  
**cito** (*adv.*): quickly  
**concito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up, rouse  
**coniuratio, -onis f.:** conspiracy, plot  
**contentus, -a, -um:** content, satisfied (+ *abl.*)  
**dimitto, -ere, dimisi, dimissus:** discharge; release  
**divulgo, -are, -avi, -atus:** disseminate; gossip  
**fabula, -ae f.:** story  
**fio, fieri, factus sum:** happen  
**haeresis, haereseos f.:** heresy  
**innoxius, -a, -um:** harmless  
**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy

**iudicium, -i n.:** trial  
**levitas, -tatis f.:** levity; fickleness  
**maiestas, -tatis f.:** treason  
**muto, -are, -avi, -atus:** change  
**paulo** (*adv.*): a little  
**per:** through (+ *acc.*)  
**pontifex, -ficiis m.:** pontiff, pope  
**scaevitia, -ae (CL *saevitia*) f.:** violence; cruelty  
**sententia, -ae f.:** opinion  
**statim** (*adv.*): immediately  
**tanquam** (CL *tamquam*): just as if  
**torqueo, -ere, torsi, tortus:** torture  
**totus, -a, -um:** whole, all  
**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus:** drag  
**tumultus, -us m.:** commotion, uproar  
**veluti** (*adv.*): just as, as if  
**Venetiae, -arum f.:** Venice

**ne ... argueretur:** neg. purpose clause

**quod ... dimitteret:** clause of reported reason, “on the grounds that he immediately released”

**quos ... cepisset ... torsisset:** subjunctive by attraction in subordinate clause

**coniurationis et maiestas:** gen. of the charge, “(on a charge) of conspiracy and treason”

**haereseos:** alt. form of gen.

**Pomponius:** Pomponio Leto (1428-1498), founder of the Roman Academy

**Venetiis:** locative, construe closely with *captus*

**captus:** Leto had already been arrested on charges of sodomy

**Iugurtha:** King of Numidia, who fought a war with Rome and was captured and executed, as recounted by Sallust; as above (ch. 46), the Sallustian reference suggests an incongruity in members of the Academy being treated like Rome’s greatest enemies

**ducitur:** asyndeton with *Trahitur*

Pomponius, vir simplicis ingenii, neque coniurationis neque alicuius sceleris conscientius. Rogatus cur nomina adolescentibus immutaret, ut homo liber erat, “Quid ad vos,” inquit, “et Paulum si mihi Foeniculi nomen indo, modo id sine dolo et fraude fiat?” Amore nanque vetustatis antiquorum {237v} praeclera nomina repetebat, quasi quaedam calcharia, quae nostram iuuentutem aemulatione ad virtutem incitarent.

<b>adoloscens, -entis</b> (CL <i>adulescens</i> ) <i>m./f.</i> :	young adult
<b>aemulatio, -onis</b> <i>f.</i> :	ambition; emulation
<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod</b> :	any
<b>amor, -oris</b> <i>m.</i> :	love
<b>antiquus, -a, -um</b> :	old, ancient
<b>calchar, -aris</b> (CL <i>calcar</i> ) <i>n.</i> :	spur (for horse)
<b>coniuratio, -onis</b> <i>f.</i> :	conspiracy
<b>conscius, -a, -um</b> :	aware of; sharing (secret) knowledge
<b>cur</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ):	why
<b>dolus, -i</b> <i>m.</i> :	trick
<b>fio, feri, factus sum</b> :	happen
<b>foeniculum, -i</b> <i>n.</i> (CL <i>feniculum</i> ):	fennel
<b>fraus, fraudis</b> <i>f.</i> :	fraud
<b>immuto, -are, -avi, -atus</b> :	change
<b>incito, -are, -avi, -atus</b> :	inspire

<b>indo, -ere, indidi, inditus</b> :	put on; give to
<b>ingenium, -i</b> <i>n.</i> :	nature; character
<b>inquam, -r, - , -</b> : say	
<b>iuventus, -tutis</b> <i>f.</i> :	youth
<b>liber, libera, liberum</b> :	free; frank
<b>modo</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ):	provided that (+ <i>subjunctive</i> )
<b>nanque</b> (CL <i>namque</i> ):	for in fact
<b>praeclarus, -a, -um</b> :	very clear; famous
<b>quasi</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ):	just as if
<b>quidam, quaedam, quoddam</b> :	certain; a kind of
<b>repeto, -ere, -ivi, -itus</b> :	return to; recall
<b>scelus, sceleris</b> <i>n.</i> :	crime
<b>simplex, -plicis</b> :	simple
<b>sine</b> :	without (+ <i>abl.</i> )
<b>vetus, -tatis</b> <i>f.</i> :	antiquity
<b>virtus, -tutis</b> <i>f.</i> :	strength; virtue

**simplicis ingenii:** gen. of description with *vir*

**conscius:** appositive to *Pomponius* and *vir*, modified by *coniurationis* and *sceleris*

**cur ... immutaret:** ind. question

**ut ... erat:** *ut* as causal conjunction, “since he was ...”

**Quid ad vos (est):** “what is it to you?” (CL *quid vobis est*), see Introduction 7.B

**modo ... fiat:** proviso clause, “as long as it ... happens”

**Amore:** abl. of cause

**antiquorum:** substantive, “the ancients,” take with *praeclera nomina*

**quaedam calcharia:** *quaedam* (*essent*) *calcharia*, pres. contrafactual, “as if they were a kind of spur”

**quae ... incitarent:** subjunctive in a rel. clause of purpose, “in order that they might inspire”

*Lucillus is also charged, based on his authorship of a letter with homoerotic content*

**57** Trahitur et Lucillus ad urbem tanquam reus maiestatis, qui in Sabinis tetricam illam vitam ducebat, quod ad Campanum scribens, quae litterae postea deprehensae sunt, Heliogabali cuiusdam amores reprehendebat, ita occulte tamen ut nisi a concio dignosci res ipsa non posset.

---

**amor, -oris** *m.*: love; (*pl.*) love affairs  
**conscius, -i** *m/f.*: accomplice, confidant  
**deprehendo, -hendere, -hensi, -hensus:**  
seize, catch  
**dignosco, -noscere, -novi, -notus:** discern,  
recognize  
**litterae, -arum** *f.*: a letter (epistle)  
**maiestas, -tatis** *f.*: treason  
**occultus, -a, -um:** hidden, secret  
**postea** (*adv.*): afterwards

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam:** a certain  
**reprehendo, -hendere, -hensi, -hensus:**  
blame, criticize  
**reus, -a, -um:** accused; guilty  
**Sabinus, -a, -um:** Sabine, a people in central  
Italy  
**scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptus:** write  
**tanquam** (CL *tamquam*): as, just as, just as if  
**tetricus, -a, -um:** gloomy, reserved  
**traho, -ere, traxi, tractus:** draw, drag, haul

---

**Lucillus:** a fellow humanist, who was arrested because of a letter he wrote that was intercepted

**reus maiestatis:** defendant on a charge of treason

**Sabinis:** substantive, assumes *finibus* ("territory"); refers to the geographic location previously occupied by the Sabines in the Apennines

**vitam:** Platina originally added, then crossed out, *caste ac sancte* ("chastely and in holiness")

**quod ... reprehendebat:** "because he was criticizing ..." explaining why Lucillus was jailed

**Campanum:** Settimuleio Campano, a student of Pomponio Leto, imprisoned with other humanists in Castel Sant'Angelo at age nineteen, see ch. 49

**quae litterae:** "a letter which," the antecedent has been attracted into the rel. clause

**Heliogabali:** Elagabalus, Roman emperor (r. 218-222 CE), known for (among other things) his gender non-conformity

**ut ... posset:** result clause

**dignosci:** pass. inf., complementary with *posset*

Vianesio again tortures the humanists

**58** Vianesius autem diligens pastor ad nos cum tormentis [387] saepius rediens, torto etiam Petreio, Calimachi comite, in fuga comprehenso ac nihil confessio, quod diceret ebriosam illam Calimachi collocutionem nullius momenti existimandam fuisse, omnia oculis collustrans, ne refractis parietibus tanquam Daedali ex alta arce volaremus, carcerem subterraneum meditatur, ac fabris statim locat;

**altus, -a, -um:** high, lofty

**arx, arcis f.:** citadel, stronghold

**carcer, -eris m.:** prison

**collocutio, -onis f.:** conversation

**collustro, -are, -avi, -atus:** look over, survey

**comes, comitis m./f.:** companion

**comprehendo, -prehendere, -prehendi,**

-prehensus (CL *comprehensus*): catch; arrest

**confiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum:** confess, admit

**diligens, diligentis:** diligent

**ebriosus, -a, -um:** drunken

**existimo, -are, -avi, -atus:** value, judge

**faber, fabri m.:** craftsman

**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, escape

**loco, -are, -avi, -atus:** arrange, contract (for)

**meditor, -ari, -atus sum:** devise, plan

**momentum, -i n.:** importance

**nullus, -a, -um:** no, none

**oculus, -i m.:** eye

**paries, -etis m.:** wall

**pastor, -oris m.:** shepherd, pastor

**redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** return, go back

**refringo, -ere, refregi, refractus:** break open

**saepius (compar. adv.):** quite often

**statim (adv.):** at once, immediately

**subterraneus, -a, -um:** subterranean

**tanquam (CL *tamquam*):** as, just as, just as if

**tormentum, -i n.:** torture device, torment

**torqueo, -ere, torsi, tortus:** twist, torture

**volo, -are, -avi, -atus:** fly

**Vianesius:** Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, Paul II's vice-chamberlain

**diligens pastor:** in the manuscripts, this sarcastic comment was taken out, then restored

**torto ... Petreio:** abl. abs.; Pietro Marso, member of the Roman Academy

**Calimachi:** Callimachus (1437-1496), member of the Roman Academy, was accused of leading the alleged conspiracy

**comprehenco ac ... confessio:** circumstantial abl. abs. with *Petreio*, "after being caught in flight and having confessed nothing"

**quod diceret:** clause of alleged reason

**nullius momenti:** gen. of indefinite value

**existimandam:** pass. periphrastic, "must be valued"

**collustrans:** agrees with *Vianesius*; in asyndeton with *rediens*

**ne ... volaremus:** neg. purpose clause dependent on *meditatur*

**Daedali:** Daedalus, the mythical figure who escapes from prison on Crete with his son Icarus by flying with wings that he built

eoque coniicit Franciscum Anguillaram, Gattalusium, Franciscum Alvianum, Iacobum Ptolemaeum quadriennio ante molestia carceris maceratos. De libertate nostra interim nullum verbum fiebat.

*Paul lavishly hosts the Holy Roman Emperor; Platina watches from his cell*

**59** Erat tum imperator in urbe; voti enim gratia venerat cum magno comitatu, quem Paulus magna cum impensa honorificentissime suscepit, expensis decem et octo millibus nummum aureorum. Ambos ex mole Hadriani sub eodem pallio a Laterano redeuntes,

---

ambi, -ae, -a: both	macero, -are, -avi, -atus: make soft, wear down
aureus, -a, -um: golden	mille, millia: thousand (CL abl. <i>milibus</i> )
comitatus, -us m.: company, retinue	moles, molis f.: mass, large structure
coniicio, -licere, -ici, -iectus: throw (together)	molestia, -ae f.: trouble
eo (adv.): there	nullus, -a, -um: no, not any
expendo, -ere, expendi, expensus: pay, pay out	nummus, -i m.: coin
fio, fieri, factus sum: happen, occur	pallium, -i n.: coverlet, canopy
honorable, -a, -um: honorable	quadriennium, -i n.: period of four years
idem, eadem, idem: the same	redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus: return, go back
impensa, -ac f.: expense, cost	suscipio, -cipere, -cepi (CL <i>suscep<i>i</i></i> ), -ceptus: undertake, receive
imperator, -oris m.: general; emperor	verbum, -i n.: word
interim (adv.): meanwhile	votum, -i n.: vow, pledge
libertas, -tatis f.: freedom, liberty	

---

**eoque:** eo (“there”) + -que (“and”)

**quadriennio:** abl. of degree of difference; take with *ante*

**maceratos:** agrees with *Franciscum* and the others listed

**imperator:** Frederick III, Holy Roman Emperor (r. 1452-1493)

**voti ... gratia:** “for the sake of a vow”

**magna ... impensa:** abl. of manner

**honorificantissime:** superlative adv.

**expensis ... millibus:** abl. abs.

**decem et octo millibus:** 18,000

**nummum aureorum:** *nummum* syncopated from *numm(or)um*, appositional gen., “18,000 (of) gold coins”

**mole Hadriani:** Castel Sant’Angelo, the fortress built onto the ruins of the mausoleum of Hadrian, see fig. 4 (p. 83)

**Hadriani:** Hadrian, Roman Emperor (r. 117-138 CE)

**Laterano:** St. John Lateran Basilica in Rome

comitante honorato quoque, inspexi. Substitit Paulus in ponte, donec imperator equites aliquot crearet.

*After the Emperor departs, Paul accuses Platina and the humanists of debating the immortality of the soul and of being Platonists*

**60** Abeunte deinde [388] imperatore, cum iam metu omni liberatus esset (nam et equitum et peditum suorum magnam partem in urbem vocaverat, veritus ne quid tumultus a populo Romano excitaretur, presente imperatore) decimo mense post captivitatem nostram in arcem veniens, ne tantum tumultus frustra concitasse

**abeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** depart, go away  
**aliquot (indecl.):** some  
**arx, arcis f.:** citadel, stronghold  
**captivitas, -tatis f.:** captivity  
**comito, -are, -avi, -atus:** accompany  
**concito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up, disturb, rush  
**creo, -are, -avi, -atus:** create, appoint  
**decimus, -a, -um:** tenth  
**deinde (adv.):** then  
**donec:** while  
**eques, equitis m.:** horseman, knight  
**excito, -are, -avi, -atus:** stir up  
**frustra (adv.):** in vain  
**honorus, -a, -um:** honored; (substantively) the nobility

**iam (adv.):** now  
**imperator, -oris m.:** general; emperor  
**inspicio, -ere, inspexi, inspectus:** observe  
**libero, -are, -avi, -atus:** free, liberate  
**mensis, -is m.:** month  
**metus, -us m.:** fear  
**pars, partis f.:** part; party  
**pedes, peditis m.:** foot soldier  
**pons, pontis m.:** bridge  
**populus, -i m.:** people  
**presens, -sentis (CL praesens):** present, at hand  
**subsisto, -sistere, -stitti, - :** halt, stand  
**tumultus, -us m.:** commotion, disturbance  
**vereor, -eri, -itus sum:** fear  
**voco, -are, -avi, -atus:** to call, summon

**comitante honorato:** abl. abs

**aliquot:** take with *equites*

**crearet:** subjunctive of circumstance introduced by *donec*

**cum ... liberatus esset:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**metu omni:** abl. of separation

**ne quid tumultus ... excitaretur:** fear clause; *quid* is *aliquid* (after *si*, *nisi*, *num* and *ne*, “ali” takes a holiday); *tumultus* is partitive gen., “that any(thing of) tumult ... be stirred up”

**decimo mense:** abl. of time when

**ne ... videretur:** neg. purpose clause, “lest he seem”

**tumultus:** partitive gen. with *tantum* “so much of a tumult”; *tantum* is acc. obj. of *concitasse*

**concitasse:** syncopated from *concita(vi)sse*

videretur, multa nobis obiicit, sed illud potissimum, quod de immortalitate animorum disputaremus, teneremusque opinionem Platonis, quam divus Augustinus Christianae religioni simillimam esse censem. “Merito,” inquit Aurelius, “Cicero deum inter philosophos Platonem vocat, qui certe cunctos ingenio et sapientia superavit”; hunc mihi delegi, quocum disputarem, qui et de ultimo hominis fine et de

---

<b>animus, -i m.</b> : soul
<b>Augustinus, -i m.</b> : Augustine
<b>Aurelius, -i m.</b> : Augustine (Aurelius Augustinus)
<b>censeo, -ere, censui, census</b> : think, judge certe ( <i>adv.</i> ): surely, certainly
<b>Christianus, -a, -um</b> : Christian
<b>Cicero, -onis m.</b> : Cicero
<b>cunctus, -a, -um</b> : all
<b>deligo, -ere, delegi, delectus</b> : choose
<b>deus, -i m.</b> : god
<b>disputo, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : debate, argue
<b>divus, -a, -um</b> : divine, blessed, saint
<b>finis, -is m.</b> : end, goal
<b>immortalitas, -tatis f.</b> : immortality

<b>ingenium, -i n.</b> : nature, talent
<b>inquam, - , - , -</b> : say
<b>merito</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): deservedly, rightly
<b>obiicio, -ere, obieci, obiectus</b> : throw before
<b>opinio, -onis f.</b> : belief, idea, opinion
<b>philosophus, -i m.</b> : philosopher
<b>Plato, -onis m.</b> : Plato
<b>potissimum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): especially
<b>religio, -onis f.</b> : religion
<b>sapientia, -ae f.</b> : wisdom
<b>similis, -e</b> : similar
<b>supero, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : overcome, surpass
<b>teneo, -ere, tenui, tentus</b> : hold, support
<b>ultimus -a -um</b> : ultimate
<b>voco, -are, -avi, -atus</b> : call

**quod ... disputaremus, teneremusque:** *quod* noun clause, “the fact that (so he says)...”; clause of alleged reason

**Platonis:** Plato, the Greek philosopher (c. 429-347 BCE); Augustine was a Neoplatonist

**Augustinus:** *Aurelius Augustinus*, Augustine (354-430 CE), Bishop of Hippo and Christian philosopher, wrote the *Confessions* and *City of God*

**Christianae religioni:** dat. with *simillimam*

**simillimam:** acc. sing. superlative of *similis*; predicate of *quam*, “which ... (he) judges to be most similar”

**censem:** note switch to indic.

**Cicero:** Marcus Tullius Cicero, 106-43 BCE, Roman orator and statesman

**quocum disputarem:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order to debate with him”

**qui:** subj. of *philosophatur*; antecedent is Plato

divina natura melius quam ceteri philosophatur. “In dubium,” inquit Paulus, “disputando Deum vocabatis.”

*Platina defends himself on various grounds*

**61** Quod quidem omnibus philosophis et theologis nostrorum temporum obiici potest, qui et animos et Deum et omnes intelligentias separatas, disputandi ac veri inveniendi causa, in dubium plerunque vocant. Praeterea vero haeretici sunt, ut ait Augustinus, qui quod prave sapiunt pertinaciter defendant. “Sanam disciplinam

---

aio, -, -, - : say, assert

**animus**, -i m.: mind, soul

**ceterus**, -a, -um (CL *ceterus*): the other

**defendo**, -ere, **defendi**, **defensus**: defend

**Deus**, -i m.: God

**disciplina**, -ae f.: teaching, instruction,  
education

**disputo**, -are, -avi, -atus: discuss, debate

**divinus**, -a, -um: divine

**dubium**, -i n.: doubt, question

**haereticus**, -i m.: heretic, teacher of false  
doctrine

**inquam**, -, -, - : say

**intelligentia**, -ae f.: intelligence

**invenio**, -ire, **inveni**, **inventus**: discover

**obiicio**, -ere, **obieci**, **obiectus**: throw before,  
oppose

**pertinaciter** (adv.): tenaciously

**philosopher**, -ari, -atus sum: philosophize

**philosophus**, -i m.: philosopher

**plerunque** (CL *plerumque*) (adv.): generally,  
commonly

**praeterea** (adv.): besides

**prave** (adv.): wrongly, perversely

**sanus**, -a, -um: sound, healthy, sensible

**sapiο**, -ere, -ivi, - : taste of, understand;  
believe

**separo**, -are, -avi, -atus: separate

**tempus**, **temporis** n.: time

**theologus**, -i m.: theologian

**vero** (adv.): truly, in fact

**verum**, -i: truth

**voco**, -are, -avi, -atus: call

---

**melius quam**: compar. adv. + *quam*, “better than”

**ceteri**: substantive, “the others”

**In dubium ... vocabatis**: “you were calling into doubt”

**disputando**: gerund, abl. of means

**Quod**: “which thing” (referring to Paul’s statement), subj. of *potest*. It is not entirely clear whether this and the rest of ch. 61 are Platina the author’s remarks to the reader, or Platina the character’s remarks to Paul; we have added quotation marks to signal our best guesses

**omnibus ... theologis**: dat. with compound verb *obiici*

**obiici**: pass. inf.

**disputandi**: gerund, “of disputing”

**veri inveniendi**: gerundive phrase, “of the truth to be discovered (i.e. of discovering the truth)”

**ut ... Augustinus**: *ut* + indicative, “as”

**Augustinus**: Augustine (354-430 CE), the famous early Christian author

**qui**: subj. of both *sapiunt* and *defendant*

nunquam aspernati sumus, quod facere consueverunt (ut ait Leo) {238R} erroris magistri, qui seorsum ab Ecclesia sentientes, haereticorum merito (Hieronymo teste) sunt appellati. Rationem vitae meae, posteaquam sapere per etatem coepi usque ad hec tempora, reddere vobis possum. Nullum mihi facinus impingi potest, non furtum, non latrocinium, non sacrilegium, non depeculatus, non parricidium, non rapina, non simonia. Vixi ut Christianum decebat, confessionem

**aio**, -, -, - : say

**appello**, -are, -avi, -atus: call

**aspernor**, -ari, -atus sum: despise, scorn

**Christianus**, -i m.: Christian

**coepio**, -ere, coepi, coeptus: begin

**confessio**, -onis f.: confession

**consuesco**, -suescere, -suevi, -suetus:

accustom oneself

**deceo**, -ere, -uit, - (impers.): befit (+ acc.)

**depeculatus**, -us m.: fraud

**Ecclesia**, -ae f.: the Church

**error**, -oris m.: error

**etas**, -tatis (CL aetas) f.: age; period of life

**facinus**, -noris n.: crime, outrage

**furtum**, -i n.: theft

**haereticus**, -i m.: heretic

**Hieronymus**, -i m.: Jerome

**impingo**, -ere, impegi, impactus: thrust

upon; tied to

**latrocinium**, -i n.: robbery

**magister, magistri** m.: teacher

**merito** (adv.): deservedly, rightly

**nullus**, -a, -um: no, not any

**nunquam** (adv.): at no time, never

**parricidium**, -i n.: parricide

**per**: through (+ acc.)

**posteaquam** (adv.): after

**rapina**, -ae f.: plunder

**ratio**, -onis f.: account

**reddo**, -ere, reddidi, redditus: return, render

**sacrilegium**, -i n.: sacrilege

**sapio**, -ere, -ivi, - : taste of, understand, have

sense

**sentio**, -ire, sensi, sensus: perceive, think

**seorsum** (adv.): separately

**simonia**, -ae f.: simony

**tempus, temporis** n.: time

**testis**, -is m./f.: witness

**usque** (adv.): up to

**vivo**, -ere, vixi, **victus**: be alive, live

**quod ... consueverunt**: antecedent is previous clause

**ut ... Leo**: *ut* + indicative “as”; Leo the Great, pope from 440-461 CE

**erroris**: obj. gen., teachers “of error”

**sentientes**: modifies *qui*

**Hieronymo teste**: abl. abs.; Jerome (340-420), early Christian scholar and author, who produced the Vulgate Bible

**Rationem**: acc. obj. of *reddere*

**sapere**: complementary inf. with *coepi*

**hec**: neut. pl. acc. (CL *haec*, see Introduction 6.B)

**reddere vobis**: “relate to you”

**mihi**: dat. of disadvantage

**impingi**: pres. pass. inf.

**non furtum ... simonia**: nom. sing. governed by *potest impingi*

**simonia**: simony, the buying or selling of ecclesiastic privileges

**ut ... decebat**: *ut* + indicative, “as”

et communionem, in anno semel praesertim, intermisi nunquam. Nil ex ore meo excidit, quod contra symbolum esset, aut haeresim saperet. Non sum imitatus Simoniacos, Carpocratianos, Ophitas, Severianos, Alogios, Paulinos, Manicheos, Macedonianos aliamve haereticorum sectam.”

**annus, -i m.**: year**communio, -onis f.**: communion**contra**: against (+ acc.)**excido, -ere, excidi, - : fall out****haeresis, -is f.**: heresy**haereticus, -i m.**: heretic**imitor, -ari, -atus sum**: imitate; follow**intermitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus:**

interrupt; omit

**nil n. (indecl.)**: nothing**nunquam (CL numquam) (adv.)**: never**os, oris n.**: mouth**praesertim (adv.)**: especially, particularly**sapiο, -ere, -ivi, - : taste of, resemble, suggest****secta, -ae f.**: sect, faction**semel (adv.)**: once**symbolum, -i n.**: orthodox doctrine**-ve**: or (*enclitic*)**communionem**: Eucharist taken during Mass**in anno semel praesertim**: “at least once a year”**quod ... esset ... saperet**: rel. clause of characteristic**quod**: antecedent is *nil***Simoniacos ... Macedonianos**: acc. objects of *sum imitatus*, a chronological and somewhat recherché list of heresies from the early Church (none later than the fourth century)**Simoniacos**: followers of Simon Magus, who were associated with a number of unorthodox beliefs, most famously selling spiritual gifts, whence the term ‘simony’ for selling Church offices**Carpocratianos**: Carpocratian, an early form of Gnostic Christianity accused of avowing a kind of sexually transgressive sacrality**Ophitas**: Ophyte, an early Christian sect that venerated the serpent from the Garden of Eden**Severianos**: Severian, an early form of ascetic Gnostic Christianity**Alogios**: Alogian, member of an early Christian sect which denied the legitimacy of the Gospel of John**Paulinos**: Paulians, an early group who believed that God existed in one person (monarchianism) rather than three**Manicheos**: Manichaean, follower of the religion founded by the Persian prophet Mani (216-276 CE)**Macedonianos**: an early sect of Christianity with unorthodox beliefs about the Holy Spirit

*Paul accuses Platina of an excessive love of pagan Antiquity, which Platina says is hypocritical, since Paul loved ancient artworks*

**62** Praeterea vero Paulus crimi*n* nobis dabat, quod nimium gentilitatis amatores essemus, cum nemo eo huius rei studiosior esset, quippe qui et statuas veterum, undique ex tota urbe conquisitas, in suas illas aedes, quas sub Capitolio extruebat, congereret, ave*c*to etiam ex sancta Agnetae beatae Constantiae sepulchro, frustra

**aedes, aedis** *f.*: temple; (*pl.*) house  
**amator, -oris** *m.*: lover, admirer  
**aveho, -ere, avexi, vectus:** carry away  
**beatus, -a, -um:** blessed  
**Capitolium, -i** *n.*: Capitol, Capitoline Hill in Rome  
**congero, -gerere, -gessi, -gestus:** collect, amass  
**conquiror, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus:** seek out, collect  
**crimen, -minis** *n.*: accusation; crime  
**extruo, -ere, extruxi, extructus:** pile up, build up  
**frustra** (*adv.*): in vain  
**gentilitas, -tatis** *f.*: abstract noun relating to the “gentiles” (non-Christians), i.e. paganism

**nemo, neminis** *m./f.*: no one, nobody  
**nimium** (*adv.*): too, too much  
**praeterea** (*adv.*): besides, thereafter, in addition  
**quippe** (*adv.*): of course, as you see  
**sanctus, -a, -um:** sacred, holy  
**sepulchrum, -i** *n.*: grave, tomb  
**statua, -ae** *f.*: statue  
**studiosus, -a, -um:** eager  
**totus, -a, -um:** whole  
**undique** (*adv.*): from every place  
**vero:** but, however  
**vetus, veteris** *n.*: old, ancient

**crimi*n* nobis:** double dat. with *dabat* (reference and purpose), ascribed it “to us as a crime”  
**quod ... essemus:** noun clause with subjunctive of alleged reason, “the fact that (according to him) ...”  
**cum ... esset:** concessive *cum* clause  
**eo:** abl. of comparison referring to himself (Paul)  
**huius rei:** obj. gen. with *studiosior*  
**studiosior:** nom. sing. m., compar. of *studiosus*  
**quippe qui:** “since he,” verb is *congereret*  
**veterum:** gen. pl. form of *vetus*; substantive, “of the ancients”  
**in suas illas aedes:** “into that famous house of his,” the Palazzo San Marco (now called Palazzo Venezia), see fig. 3 (p. 72)  
**congereret:** Platina originally wrote, then crossed out, *ne sanctis etiam parceret* (“lest he even spare the saints”)  
**ave*c*to ... sepulchro:** abl. abs.  
**sancta Agneta:** the Church of Saint Agnes Outside the Walls, built by Pope Honorius I in the 7th century  
**beatae Constantiae:** Saint Constance, eldest daughter of Roman emperor Constantine

reclamantibus monachis loci, qui postea mortuo Paulo sepulchrum illud porphyreticum a Sixto Pontifice repetiere. Praeterea vero numismata prope infinita ex auro, argento, aere, sua imagine signata, sine ullo senatusconsulto in fundamentis aedificiorum suorum more veterum collocabat, veteres\* potius hac in re quam Petrum, Anacletum, et Linum imitatus\*.

**aedificium, -i** *n.*: building

**aes, aeris** *n.*: bronze

**argentum, -i** *n.*: silver

**aurum, -i** *n.*: gold

**colloco, -are, -avi, -atus**: place; establish

**fundamentum, -i** *n.*: foundation

**imago, -ginis** *f.*: likeness, image

**imito, -are, -avi, -atus**: imitate

**infinitus, -a, -um**: endless, infinite

**locus, -i** *m.*: place, location

**monachus, -i** *m.*: monk

**mos, moris** *m.*: custom

**numisma, -atis** *n.*: coin

**pontifex, -ficiis** *m.*: pontiff, pope

**porphyreticus, -a, -um**: made of porphyry  
(scarlet stone)

**postea** (*adv.*): afterwards

**potius** (*adv.*): more so (than)

**praeterea** (*adv.*): moreover, besides

**prope** (*adv.*): near, nearly, almost

**reclamo, -are, -avi, -atus**: cry out in protest

**repeto, -ere, -ivi, -itus**: get back; ask for  
something back

**senatusconsultum, -i** *n.*: decree of the Senate

**sepulchrum, -i** *n.*: grave, tomb

**signo, -are, -avi, -atus**: mark, stamp

**sine**: without (+ *abl.*)

**illus, -a, -um**: any

**vero** (*adv.*): truly, in fact

**vetus, veteris** *m.*: old; (substantively) the  
ancients

**qui postea**: antecedent is *monachis*

**Sixto Pontifice**: Pope Sixtus IV (r. 1471-1484), Francesco della Rovere, who  
succeeded Paul II and to whom Platina dedicated the *Lives of the Popes*

**repetiere**: alt. form of *repetierunt*

**signata**: neut. pl. acc. agreeing with *numismata*

**more**: abl. of respect, “in accordance with the custom”

**veteres\* ... imitatus\***: Platina originally wrote, but then crossed out before printing,  
*collocabat, Tiberium potius hac in re quam Petrum et Claudium quam Anacletum  
et Neronem quam Linum imitatus* (“in this matter imitating Tiberius rather than  
Peter, Claudius rather than Anacletus, and Nero rather than Linus”)

**potius ... quam**: “more than”

**Petrum, Anacletum, et Linum**: Peter, Anacletus, and Linus were the first three  
popes. Platina criticizes Paul for imitating the early emperors of Rome rather than  
the early popes

*Two bishops and two monks come to try Platina; Leonardo of Perugia speaks against him and Francesco of Assisi for him*

**63** Cum vero nostra de re inter Palatinos episcopos et duos fratres esset aliquando disceptatum, quorum alter erat ordinis Francisci, alter Dominici, venerunt fere omnes in hanc sententiam, nihil esse in nobis, quod haeresim saperet\*. [389]

*Paul then excludes Francesco in an attempt to influence the proceedings*

**64** Verum cum Paulus in arcem venisset, excludereturque de industria Franciscus patronus noster veritatis assertor, quo liberius

---

**aliquando** (*adv.*): finally  
**arx, arcis** *f.*: citadel, fortress  
**assertor, -oris** *m.*: defender, advocate  
**discepto, -are, -avi, -atus**: dispute, debate  
**duo, -ae, -o:** two  
**episcopus, -i** *m.*: bishop  
**excludo, -ere, exclusi, exclusus:** shut out, exclude  
**fere** (*adv.*): nearly  
**haeresis, -is** *f.*: heresy, heretical doctrine

**industria, -ae** *f.*: diligence  
**liber, -a, -um:** free, unrestrained  
**ordo, ordinis** *m.*: order (of monks)  
**Palatinus, -a, -um:** Palatine, of the palace  
**patronus, -i** *m.*: advocate  
**sapio, -ere, -ivi, - :** taste of  
**sententia, -ae** *f.*: opinion, feeling  
**veritas, -tatis** *f.*: truth  
**vero:** but, however  
**verum** (*adv.*): but yet, however

---

**Cum ... esset ... disceptatum:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**Palatinos episcopos:** a kind of bishop with special rights and privileges

**alter ... alter:** “one ... the other”

**ordinis Francisci:** gen. of description, “of the order of Francis” (i.e. Franciscan)

**Dominici (ordinis):** gen. of description, “of the order of Dominic,” (i.e. Dominican)

**nihil esse:** ind. statement introduced by *venerunt in sententiam*, “that there was nothing in us which ...”

**quod ... saperet\*:** rel. clause of characteristic. Platina originally wrote, then crossed out the sentence *Solus Leonardus Perusinus ordinis Praedicatorum Paulo rem gratam facturus, quod ab eo episcopatum vel locum generalis ordinis sui expetebat, impugnare nos ausus est: cuius argumenta omnia Franciscus Assisius ordinis Minorum confutavit et infregit* (“Only Leonardo of Perugia of the Dominican order, trying to please Paul, because he was seeking from him a bishopric or the position of General of his Order, dared to impugn us: all of whose arguments Francesco from Assisi of the Order of Friars Minor refuted and shattered”)

**cum ... venisset, excludereturque:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**de industria:** idiom, “on purpose”

**Franciscus:** subj. of *excluderetur*

**quo ... liceret:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that by this it might be granted to Leonardo to speak more freely”

**liberius:** compar. adv. of *liber*

Leonardo loqui liceret\*, eadem dicit quae pridie. Rogati sententiam, qui tum aderant et si ad nutum pontificis aliqua ex parte loquebantur, nostram tamen causam leviorem faciebant, ac pontificem mitiorem reddere conabantur. Solus autem inter omnes Laelius Valle, Romanus civis et advocatus concistorialis, nostram causam libere tutatus est. Confutat omnia quae a Leonardo dicta erant, queque partim affirmaverat alter advocatus, Andreas Sanctae Crucis\*.

---

<b>adsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:</b> be present
<b>advocatus, -i m.:</b> counselor, advocate
<b>affirmo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> assert
<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod:</b> some, any
<b>civis, -is m./f.:</b> citizen
<b>concistorialis, -e</b> (or <i>consistorialis</i> ): of the consistory (the assembly of cardinals)
<b>confuto, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> refute
<b>conor, -ari, -atus sum:</b> attempt
<b>crux, crucis f.:</b> cross
<b>idem, eadem, idem:</b> the same
<b>levis, -e:</b> light
<b>libere (adv.):</b> freely; generously

---

<b>licet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.):</b> it is permitted
<b>loquor, loqui, locutus sum:</b> speak
<b>mitis, -e:</b> mild
<b>nutus, -us m.:</b> nod; will
<b>pars, partis f.:</b> part
<b>partim (adv.):</b> partly
<b>pontifex, -ficus m.:</b> pope, pontiff
<b>pridie (adv.):</b> day before
<b>reddo, -ere, reddidi, redditus:</b> render
<b>sanctus, -a, -um:</b> sacred, holy
<b>sententia, -ae f.:</b> opinion
<b>solus, -a, -um:</b> alone
<b>tutor, -ari, -atus sum:</b> defend

---

**Leonardo:** dat. of reference with *liceret*

**loqui:** subject inf. with *liceret*

**liceret\*:** Platina originally wrote, then crossed out, *pretium iusti sanguinis ob eam rem accepturo* ("who would receive a reward for just blood because of this affair")

**dicit:** main verb, subj. is *Leonardus*

**quae pridie:** *quae* (*dixerat*) *pridie*

**qui:** antecedent is *Rogati*

**si ... loquebantur:** coordinated with *qui*, "those who were present and who spoke ..."

**ad nutum:** figuratively, "in line with the will"

**aliqua ex parte:** idiom, "to some degree"

**leviorem ... mitiorem:** note the parallelism between these two compar. adj., each a predicate, and their respective phrases

**Laelius Valle:** Lelio della Valle (d. 1476)

**a Leonardo:** abl. of agent, the accuser of Platina and the other humanists

**queque ... affirmaverat:** *queque* is neut. pl. *quae* + *-que* (on the diphthong see Introduction 6.B); coordinated with *quae ... dicta erant*; antecedent of both is *omnia*

**Andreas Sanctae Crucis\*:** nom. sing. m.; Andrea di Iacopo di Santa Croce, a clergyman and advocate of the *Camera Apostolica*. Platina had originally written the appositive *homo surdaster et loquax* ("a man unlistening and always speaking")

*The Roman Academy is mentioned and receives criticism*

**65** Fit autem inter dicendum de Academia mentio. Inclamat tum M. Barbus, Sancti Marci cardinalis, nos non academicos esse sed foedatores Academiae. Quid turpitudinis autem a nobis in Academiam prodierit, certe non video, cum nec fures, nec latrones, nec incendiarii, nec decoctores essemus. Veteres academicos sequebamur, novos contemnentes, {238v} qui in rebus ipsis nil certi ponebant. Paulus tamen\* haereticos eos pronunciavit qui nomen

**Academia, -ae f.**: the Academy, Plato's school  
**academicus, -a, -um**: academic, a follower of

Platonic philosophy

**cardinalis, -is m.**: cardinal

**certe (adv.)**: certainly

**certus, -a, -um**: certain

**contemno, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptus**:

disdain

**decoctor, -oris m.**: defaulting debtor

**fio, feri, factus sum**: happen, come about

**foedor, -is m.**: befouler, defiler

**fur, furis m./f.**: thief

**haereticus, -i m.**: heretic

**incendiarius, -i m.**: arsonist

**inclamo, -are, -avi, -atus**: cry out

**inter**: among, amidst (+ acc.)

**latro, -onis m.**: bandit

**mentio, -onis f.**: mention

**nil (indecl.)**: nothing

**novus, -a, -um**: new

**pono, -ere, posui, positus**: propose, posit

**prodeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus**: go out

**pronuncio, -are, -avi, -atus** (CL *pronuntio*):  
declare

**sequor, sequi, secutus sum**: follow

**turpitudo, -dinus f.**: ugliness, shame

**vetus, veteris**: old

**inter dicendum**: gerund, “amidst the speaking”

**M. Barbus ... cardinalis**: Marco Barbo, Paul II's relative, cardinal priest of St. Mark's Basilica in Rome, a patron of humanists and owner of a large library

**sed (nos esse) foedatores Academiae**: *Academiae* is obj. gen.

**Quid turpitudinis**: partitive gen., “What (of) shame”

**Quid ... prodierit**: ind. question dependent on *video*

**cum ... essemus**: causal *cum* clause

**Veteres academicos**: the “Old Academy,” Plato and his fourth-century BCE successors

**novos contemnentes**: the “New Academy” embraced skepticism, which could be criticized from a Christian perspective as a lack of faith

**qui ... ponebant**: causal rel. clause

**nil certi**: partitive gen. with implied *esse*, “that there was nothing (of) certain”

**tamen\***: Platina originally wrote, but then crossed out before printing, a sarcastic comment: *tamen tantae doctrinae erat* (Paul “was nevertheless of such great learning”)

**haereticos**: predicate, “declares those men to be heretics”

**qui ... commemorarent**: rel. clause of characteristic; antecedent of *qui* is *eos*

Academiae vel serio vel ioco deinceps commemorarent. Inusta est haec ignominia Platoni; ipse se tueatur.

*Paul attempts to mock Pomponio Leto about his name; Pomponio responds with a joke that Paul fails to get*

**66** Volebat Paulus rebus in omnibus videri acutus et doctus\*; volebat item videri facetus; deridebat fere omnes contemnebatque. Interrogat tum Pomponium, hominem irridens: quod ei a teneris annis nomen imposuerant parentes? Respondet Pomponius se

**Academia**, -ae *f.*: the Academy

**acutus**, -a, -um: sharp, wise

**annus**, -i *m.*: year; age

**commemoro**, -are, -avi, -atus: mention

**contemno**, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptus:  
disdain

**deinceps** (*adv.*): in order, thereafter

**derideo**, -ere, **derisi**, **derisus**: mock, deride

**doctus**, -a, -um: learned

**facetus**, -a, -um: witty

**fere** (*adv.*): almost

**ignominia**, -ae *f.*: disgrace; punishment

**impono**, -ere, **imposui**, **impositus**: impose,  
assign

**interrogo**, -are, -avi, -atus: ask

**inuro**, -ere, **inussi**, **inustus**: burn onto,  
brand

**iocus**, -i *m.*: joke

**irrideo**, -ere, **irrisi**, **irrisus**: ridicule

**item** (*adv.*): likewise

**parens**, -entis *m./f.*: parent

**Plato**, -onis *m.*: Plato

**respondeo**, -ere, **respondi**, **responsus**:  
answer

**serius**, -a, -um: serious

**tener**, **tenera**, **tenerum**: tender, young

**tueor**, -eri, **tutus sum**: look after, examine,  
defend

**volo**, **velle**, **volui**, - : wish, want

**vel ... vel**: either ... or

**vel serio**, **vel ioco**: abls. of manner; *serio* is used substantively, “in a serious comment”

**tueatur**: jussive subj.; more sarcasm

**videri**: compl. inf. with *volebat*, “to seem”

**doctus\***: Platina originally wrote but then crossed out *doctus*, *cum re vera natura et arte parum profecisset* (“although in actual fact by nature and skill he had little success”)

**contemnebatque**: Platina originally wrote *contemnebat ac si ipse nil in se haberet quod reprehendi posset* (“as if he had nothing in himself which could be criticized”)

**Pomponium**: Pomponio Leto, founder of the Roman Academy

**hominem**: acc. obj. of *irridens*, appositive of *Pomponium*

**irridens**: describes Paul, the implied subj. of *interrogat*

**quod ... imposuerant parentes**: ind. question that retains the indicative to emphasize its non-hypothetical character, “he asked ... what name his parents had (actually) given to him ...”

**a teneris annis**: abl. place from which with sense of time, “from his tender years”

Binomyum fuisse. Confusus novitate rei Paulus\* substitit amplius de nomine quaerere.

*Paul accuses Platina of many things, including ingratitude, which Platina reflects on sarcastically*

**67** Ad me autem conversus, [390] in omnem contumeliam prorupit; omitto quod mihi coniurationem, haeresim, maiestatis crimen obiiceret, quae omnia iam purgata erant; obiiciebat etiam ingratiitudinem, quod in me licet ingratum officiosus fuisse. Si spoliare homines emptione sua incognita causa, si carcere, si tormentis,

<b>amplius</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): further	<b>licet:</b> although
<b>binomyus, -a, -um</b> (or <i>binomius</i> ): two-named	<b>maiestas, -tatis</b> <i>f.</i> : treason
<b>carter, -eris</b> <i>m.</i> : prison	<b>novitas, -tatis</b> <i>f.</i> : newness, strangeness
<b>confusus, -a, -um</b> : confused, perplexed	<b>obiicio, -ere, obieci, obiectus:</b> throw before; charge to X ( <i>dat.</i> ) the fault Y ( <i>acc.</i> )
<b>coniuratio, -onis</b> <i>f.</i> : conspiracy	
<b>contumelia, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> : abuse, insult	<b>officiossus, -a, -um</b> (CL <i>officiosus</i> ): dutiful
<b>converto, -verte, -verti, -versus:</b> turn toward	<b>omitto, -ere, omisi, omissus:</b> leave out, pass over
<b>crimen, criminis</b> <i>n.</i> : charge; crime	<b>prorumpo, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptus:</b> break out
<b>emptio, -onis</b> <i>f.</i> : purchase, property	<b>pурgo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> clear
<b>haeresis, -is</b> <i>f.</i> : heresy	<b>quaero, -ere, quaeſivi, quaeſitus:</b> ask
<b>iam</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): now; already	<b>spolio, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> rob
<b>incognitus, -a, -um:</b> unknown	<b>subsisto, -sistere, -stisti, -:</b> stop
<b>ingratitudo, -dinis</b> <i>f.</i> : ingratitude	<b>tormentum, -i</b> <i>n.</i> : torture
<b>ingratus, -a, -um:</b> ungrateful	

**se ... fuisse:** ind. statement introduced by *respondet*

**Binomyum:** that is, he has two names, his birth name (Giulio Sanseverino) and his chosen classicized name (Iulius Pomponius Laetus)

**Confusus:** Paul does not understand the word-play, as above in ch. 46

**novitate:** abl. of means

**Paulus\***: Instead of *Paulus* Platina originally wrote a sarcastic *homo doctus*, but changed it to the name before printing

**quaerere:** complementary inf. with *substitit*

**quae omnia:** “all (of) which,” antecedents are the listed crimes of the previous clause

**quod ... fuisse:** clause of alleged reason, “because (so he said) he had been dutiful to me although (I was) ungrateful”

**spoliare ... afficere:** subject infs. of *est beneficium*

**emptione sua:** abl. of separation

**incognita causa:** abl. abs. with concessive sense

si ignominia, si calumnia afficere beneficium est, certe erga me  
beneficus et liberalis dici potest Paulus, et ego ingratus, qui tanto-  
rum maleficiorum immemor ab urbe non discesserim suis mandatis  
obtemperans, suis pollicitationibus totiens frustratus.

*After a year of imprisonment, Platina is granted freedom of movement in Paul's house, then the grounds of the Vatican, then all of Rome*

**68** Abiit inde minabundus, et ob iram, quam tum conceperat,  
nos usque ad integrum annum retinuit. Ita eum credo iurasse,  
quando nos cepit et in carcerem coniecit; noluit periurus videri.

abeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus: depart  
afficio, -ere, affeci, affectus: afflict  
annus, -i m.: year  
beneficium, -i n.: kindness, benefit  
beneficus, -a, -um: beneficent  
calumnia, -ae f.: false accusation  
capiro, -ere, cepi (CL cepti), captus: take hold,  
capture  
carcer, -eris m.: prison  
certe (adv.): surely  
concipio, -cipere, -cepī (CL concepi),  
-ceptus: conceive  
coniicio, -iicere, -iēci (CL conieci),  
coniectus: put  
discedo, -ere, discessi, discessus: depart  
erga: towards (+ acc.)  
frustro, -are, -avi, -atus: disappoint, deceive  
ignominia, -ae f.: disgrace

immemor, -oris (gen.): forgetful  
inde (adv.): thence  
ingratus, -a, -um: ungrateful  
integer, integra, integrum: whole  
ira, -ae f.: anger  
iuro, -are, -avi, -atus: swear  
liberalis, -e: honorable, generous  
maleficium, -i n.: evil deed  
mandatum, -i n.: order  
minabundus, -a, -um: threatening  
nolo, nolle, nolui, -i : wish not to  
obtempero, -are, -avi, -atus: obey (+ dat.)  
periurus, -i m.: a liar  
pollicitatio, -onis f.: promise  
quando (adv.): when  
retineo, -ere, retinui, retentus: hold, restrain  
totiens (adv.): so often  
usque (adv.): all the way up to

**certe ... Paulus:** Platina's sarcasm is becoming more pronounced

dici: pres. pass. inf.

**qui ... discesserim:** causal rel. clause

**suis mandatis ... suis pollicitationibus:** referring to Paul

**Abiit ... conceperat ... retinuit:** Paul is the subj.

**Ita:** "thus"; i.e. that he would keep them jailed for a year

**eum ... iurasse:** ind. statement introduced by *credo*; *iurasse* syncopated from *iura(vi)sse*

**videri:** complementary pass. inf., "to seem"

Dimissos tandem in aedibus suis viginti diebus ita nos retinet, ut efferre pedem domo non liceret. Vagari deinde per Vaticanum sinit. Fatigatus postremo cardinalium precibus, liberos tandem nos facit.

*Paul eventually allows Platina to leave Rome and go to the Baths to heal his arm, wounded from the torture; Platina returns afterwards, regaining Paul's trust*

**69** Vocor non ita multo post litteris a Lodovico Gonzaga principe Mantuano ad balnea Petriolana valitudinis causa, quam in

---

**aedis, -is f.**: temple; (*pl.*) home

**balneum, -i n.**: bath

**cardinalis, -is m.**: cardinal

**deinde (adv.)**: then

**dies, diei m./f.**: day

**dimitto, -ere, dimisi, dimissus**: send away

**domus, -i f.**: house

**effero, efferre, extuli, elatus**: carry out

**fatigo, -are, -avi, -atus**: wear out

**liber, libera, liberum**: free

**licet, -ere, -uit, -itus est (impers.)**: it is  
permitted

**litterae, -arum f.**: a letter (epistle)

**multo (adv.)**: by much

**per**: through (+ acc.)

**pes, pedis m.**: foot

**postremo (adv.)**: at last

**prex, precis f.**: prayer, request

**princeps, -cipis m.**: leader; prince

**retineo, -ere, retinui, retentus**: restrain

**sino, -ere, sivi, situs**: allow

**tandem (adv.)**: finally

**vagor, -ari, -atus sum**: wander

**valitudo, -dinis f.** (CL *valetudo*): good health

**Vaticanum, -i n.**: the Vatican

**viginti (indecl.)**: twenty

---

**Dimissos**: agrees with *nos*

**nos**: acc. obj. of *retinet*, “he held us, dismissed, in this way ...”

**viginti diebus**: abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**ut ... liceret**: result clause

**domo**: abl. place from which, does not take a preposition with *domo*

**sinit: (nos) sinit**

**liberos**: predicate adj., “(makes us) free”

**litteris**: abl. of means

**Lodovico Gonzaga**: Ludovico III, Marquis of Mantua (r. 1444-1478), father of Platina’s patron Francesco Gonzaga

**balnea Petriolana**: the baths of Petriolo, a province within Macerata in northeastern Italy

**valitudinis**: take with *causa*

**quam**: antecedent is *valitudinis*

carcere dextro humero debilitatus contraxeram. Eo ut proficiscerer, primo vetuit Paulus, quod diceret se brevi rei meae bene consulturum. Eo tamen ac redeo, spondente redditum meum Bessarione cardinali Niceno, viro praestantis ingenii et singularis litteraturae. Fidem meam commendat Paulus, ac crebro iactat optimam eius erga me voluntatem. Post discessum Borsii Estensis, quem ad urbem [391] cum magno equitatu venientem magnificentissime et laute

**bene** (*adv.*): well

**brevi** (*adv.*): in a short time

**carcer, -eris** *m.*: prison

**cardinalis, -is** *m.*: cardinal

**commendō, -are, -avi, -atus**: commend

**consulo, -sulere, -sului, -sultus**: make plans  
in the interest of (+ *dat.*)

**contraho, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus**: contract;  
diminish

**crebro** (*adv.*): often

**debilitatus, -a, -um**: maimed

**dexter, -tra, -trum**: right

**discessus, -us** *m.*: departure

**eo** (*adv.*): there, to that place

**equitatus, -us** *m.*: cavalry

**erga**: towards, for (+ *acc.*)

**fides, fidei** *f.*: faith, loyalty

**humerus, -i** *m.*: upper arm

**iacto, -are, -avi, -atus**: boast (of)

**ingenium, -i** *n.*: talent

**lauete** (*adv.*): elegantly

**litteratura, -ae** *f.*: erudition

**magnifice** (*adv.*): splendidly

**Nicenus, -a, -um**: Nicene, of Nicaea

**praestans, praestantis**: outstanding

**primo** (*adv.*): at first

**proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum**: depart

**redeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus**: return

**reditus, -us** *m.*: return

**singularis, -e**: singular

**spondeo, -ere, spondoi, sponsus**: promise

**veto, -are, -ui, -itus**: forbid

**voluntas, -tatis** *f.*: goodwill

**dextro humero**: abl. of respect; the wounded arm would have been the result of the

*strappado* method of torture: being hung by the arms after they have been tied  
behind the back, and then being dropped

**debilitatus**: agrees with 1<sup>st</sup> person subject

**ut proficiscerer**: ind. command

**quod diceret**: clause of alleged reason

**se ... consulturum (esse)**: ind. statement introduced by *diceret*, “that he would make  
plans shortly for my benefit”

**spondente ... Bessarione**: abl. abs.

**Bessarione cardinali Niceno**: Basilius Bessarion (1403-1472), Cardinal of Nicaea, a  
longtime friend and supporter of Platina and the humanists

**viro ... litteraturae**: *viro* in apposition to *Bessarione*; *praestantis ingenii* and *singularis  
litteraturae* gen. of description

**iactat ... voluntatem**: *iactat* conveys disdain of Paul’s actions, as Paul has clearly not  
demonstrated “his best kindness”

**Borsii Estensis**: Borso D’Este (1413-1471), made Duke of Ferrara in 1471 by Paul II

suscēperat, ducemque Ferrariae creaverat, me brevi visurum quo in me animo esset. Idque etiam oratoribus tum Venetorum, tum ducis Mediolanensis, qui me ei commendaverant, saepe pollicitus fuerat.

*Two years later, Paul dies*

**70** Biennio hac spe ductus vel frustratus potius, ire Bononiam institueram cum Cardinali Mantuano eiusdem civitatis legato. Quominus id facerem vetat Paulus; dicitque (ita erat urbanus et facetus) me satis sapere, et facultatibus potius quam {239R} litteratura

---

**animus, -i m.:** mind  
**biennium, -i n.:** two years  
**Bononia, -ae f.:** Bologna  
**brevi (adv.):** in a short time  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**civitas, -tatis f.:** city  
**commendo, -are, -avi, -atus:** entrust, commend  
**creo, -are, -avi, -atus:** create; invest  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader; duke  
**facetus, -a, -um:** clever  
**facultas, -tatis f.:** means, wealth  
**Ferraria, -ae f.:** Ferrara, a town in northern Italy  
**frustro, -are, -avi, -atus:** disappoint, deceive

**idem, eadem, idem:** the same  
**instituo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** set up, decide  
**legatus, -i m.:** legate  
**literatura, -ae f.:** erudition  
**Mediolanensis, -e m.:** Milanese, of Milan  
**orator, -oris m.:** orator, ambassador  
**polliceor, -eri, -itus sum:** promise  
**sapio, -ere, -ivi, -i:** have sense; know  
**satis (adv.):** enough  
**spes, spei f.:** hope  
**suscipio, -cipere, -cepī (CL *suscepī*), -ceptus:** receive  
**urbanus, -a, -um:** witty  
**Veneti, -orum m.:** the Venetians  
**veto, -are, -ui, -itus:** forbid

---

**me ... visurum (esse):** implied ind. statement, “that I would soon see”

**quo ... esset:** rel. clause of characteristic

**in me:** “toward me”

**Idque:** *id + -que*; acc. obj. of *pollicitus fuerat*

**pollicitus fuerat:** CL *pollicitus erat* (see Introduction 7.D)

**Biennio:** abl. of extent of time (post-Classical, see Introduction 7.A)

**hac spe:** abl. of means

**Bononiam:** acc. of place to which

**Cardinali Mantuano:** Platina’s patron Francesco Gonzaga

**eiusdem civitatis:** obj. gen., referring back to Bologna; he was the pope’s legate “for that same city”

**legato:** appositive to *Cardinali*

**Quominus ... facerem:** prevention clause, “forbid me from doing it”

**me ... sapere:** ind. statement introduced by *dicitque*

**potius quam:** “rather than”

indigere. Sed ecce, dum expecto ut mei tandem tot calamitatibus tot malis circumventi misereatur, pontifex ipse apoplexia moritur secunda hora noctis, solus in cubiculo nemine vidente, cum eo die laetus etiam concistorium habuisset, pontificatus sui anno sexto, mense decimo, quinto Calendas Augusti, MCCCCLXXI.

**annus, -i** *m.*: year

**apoplexia, -ae** *f.*: apoplexy

**Augustus, -i** *m.*: August

**calamitas, -tatis** *f.*: calamity

**Calendae, -arum** *f.*: Kalends, 1st of month

**circumvenio, -venire, -veni, -ventus:**

surround; assail

**concistorium, -i** (*CL consistorium*) *n.*:

consistory

**cubiculum, -i** *n.*: chamber

**decimus, -a, -um**: tenth

**dies, diei** *m./f.*: day

**ecce:** behold

**expecto, -are, -avi, -atus:** expect, wait

**hora, -ae** *f.*: hour

**indigeo, -ere, -ui, - :** lack (+ *abl.*)

**laetus, -a, -um**: happy, healthy

**malum, -i** *n.*: evil; misfortune

**mensis, -is** *m.*: month

**misereor, -eri, -itus sum**: have pity on (+ *gen.*)

**nemo, neminis** *m./f.*: no one

**nox, noctis** *f.*: night

**pontifex, -ficiis** *m.*: pontiff, pope

**pontificatus, -us** *m.*: pontificate, time as pope

**quintus, -a, -um**: fifth

**secundus, -a, -um**: second

**sextus, -a, -um**: sixth

**solus, -a, -um**: alone

**tandem** (*adv.*): finally

**tot** (*indecl.*): so many

**dum:** temporal indicating simultaneous action, “while”

**ut ... misereatur:** noun clause, obj. of *expecto*, “await that he have pity on me ...”

**tot calamitatibus tot malis:** abls. of means

**circumventi:** agrees with *mei*

**secunda hora:** abl. of time when

**nemine vidente:** abl. abs. temporal

**cum ... habuisset:** concessive *cum* clause

**concistorium:** consistory, the assembly of the cardinals

**pontificatus:** gen. sing. masc.

**anno sexto, mense decimo, quinto:** abl. of time when

**quinto (die ante) Calendas Augusti:** *die ante* (as usual) is left out of this common formula; CL would use adj. *Augustas* (acc.) rather than noun *Augusti* (gen.); date is July 28, 1471

*Paul was a large man, and took special care of his appearance*

71 Fuit autem in homine, quantum ad corpus pertinet, maiestas pontifice digna. Erat enim magni ac vasti corporis, adeo ut dum ad rem divinam proficiseretur, solus emineret. Circa [392] cultum corporis, etsi morosus non erat, nequaquam tamen negligens habebatur. Fuere etiam qui dicerent eum, dum in publicum prodiret, faciem sibi fucis concinare.

**adeo** (*adv.*): to such a degree

**circa**: concerning (+ *acc.*)

**concino, -are, -avi, -atus** (CL *concinno*): put in order; prepare

**corpus, -oris n.**: body

**cultus, -us m.**: care

**dignus, -a, -um**: worthy of (+ *abl.*)

**divinus, -a, -um**: divine

**emineo, -ere, -ui, -** : stand out

**etsi**: although

**facies, faciei f.**: face

**fucus, -i m.**: dye; (as cosmetic) rouge

**maiestas, -tatis f.**: majesty; greatness

**morosus, -a, -um**: fastidious

**negligo, -ligere, -lixi, -lictus** (CL *neglego*): to disregard; to be negligent

**nequaquam** (*adv.*): by no means

**pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus**: relate to; pertain to

**pontifex, -ficiis m.**: pontiff, pope

**prodeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus**: to go out

**proficiscor, -ficiisci, -fectus sum**: proceed; commence

**publicus, -a, -um**: public

**quantum** (*adv.*): so much as; as

**solus, -a, -um**: only; alone

**vastus, -a, -um**: vast, huge

**maiestas pontifice digna**: nom. *maiestas* agrees with *digna*, which determines abl. *pontifice*

**magni ac vasti corporis**: gen. of description; Platina originally characterized Paul's body as *obesi* ("obese")

**ut ... emineret**: result clause; he stands out because of his excessive size

**dum ... proficiseretur**: *dum* + imperf. subj., "while/when" (see Introduction 7.C)

**ad rem divinam**: CL uses this phrase for making a sacrifice to the gods; here rather to perform Christian liturgical functions

**corporis**: obj. gen. with *cultum*

**nequaquam ... habebatur**: "was by no means considered (to be)"; litotes implying he was quite concerned with his appearance

**Fuere**: alt. form of *fuerunt*

**qui dicerent**: rel. clause of characteristic

**dum ... prodiret**: *dum* + imperf. subj., "while/when" (see Introduction 7.C)

**in publicum**: substantive, "(to go out) in public"

**sibi**: dat. of advantage, "made his face up for himself with rouge"

*Paul favored extravagant dress and liked to be seen*

**72** De apparatu pontificio non est cur ambigas maiores ab hoc uno superatos, regno praesertim, sive mitram velis appellare, in quam multas opes contulit, coemptis undique ac magnis preciis adamantibus, saphyris, smaragdis, chrysolitis, hyaspidibus, unionibus, et quicquid gemmarum in precio est, quibus ornatus tanquam alter Aron, in publicum forma humana augustiore prodibat. Inspicatum ab omnibus volebat et admirari. Hanc ob rem nonnunquam

**adamas, -mantis** *m.*: diamond  
**admiror, -ari, -atus sum**: admire  
**ambigo, -ere, -, -**: be in doubt  
**apparatus, -us** *m.*: accoutrements  
**appello, -are, -avi, -atus**: call; name  
**augustus, -a, -um**: majestic  
**chrysolit(h)us, -i** *m.*: topaz  
**coemo, -ere, coemi, coemptus**: buy up  
**confero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus**: bring together; devote  
**cur (adv.)**: why  
**forma, -ae** *f.*: form, appearance  
**gemma, -ae** *f.*: gem  
**humanus, -a, -um**: human  
**hyaspis, hyaspidis** (*CL iaspis*) *m.*: jasper  
**inspicio, -ere, inspexi, inspectus**: look at, observe  
**maiores, -orum** *m.*: ancestors  
**mitra, -ae** *f.*: mitre, headdress for a Church official

**nonnunquam** (*adv.*): sometimes  
**ops, opis** *f.*: power; wealth (*pl.*)  
**ornatus, -a, -um**: adorned  
**pontificius, -a, -um**: pontifical  
**praesertim** (*adv.*): especially  
**precium, -i** (*CL pretium*) *n.*: price; worth  
**prodeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus**: to go out  
**publicus, -a, -um**: public  
**quisquis, quicquid**: whoever, whatever  
**regnum, -i** *n.*: kingdom; papal tiara  
**saphyrus, -i** *m.*: sapphire  
**sive**: or if  
**smaragdus, -i** *m.*: emerald  
**supero, -are, -avi, -atus**: overcome; surpass  
**tanquam** (*CL tamquam*): just as if  
**undique** (*adv.*): from everywhere  
**unio, -onis** *m.*: pearl  
**volo, velle, volui, -** : want, wish

**non est cur**: “there is no (reason) why”

**ambigas**: pres. subjunctive in ind. question

**maiores ... superatos (esse)**: ind. statement introduced by *ambigas*

**regno**: abl. of respect

**quicquid gemmarum**: partitive gen., “whatever (of) gems”

**in precio**: “in value,” so highly regarded

**alter Aron**: Aaron, brother of Moses, was the first high priest. Josephus described him as having an elaborate headdress (*Ant. III.vii.6*)

**in publicum**: substantive, go out “in public”

**forma ... augustiore**: abl. of description; *augustiore* is compar. adj.

**humana**: abl. of comparison “with an appearance more venerable than human”

**Inspici**: pres. pass. inf.

**admirari**: a deponent verb, but here with a true pass. sense

peregrinos in urbe retinuit, intermissa ostendendi sudarii consuetudine, quo a pluribus eodem tempore cerneretur.

*Paul also favored extravagant dress for the cardinals; some believed this splendor did not serve Christianity*

**73** Praeterea vero ne solus differre a ceteris videretur, publico decreto mandavit proposita poena ne quispiam bireta coccinea (ita appellant capitinis tegmen) praeter cardinales ferret; quibus etiam

---

<b>appello, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> call; name
<b>bi(r)retum, -i n.:</b> biretta; a small, square Catholic clergy hat
<b>caput, capitnis n.:</b> head
<b>cardinalis, -is m.:</b> cardinal
<b>cerno, -ere, crevi, cretus:</b> discern; see
<b>coccineus, -a, -um:</b> scarlet
<b>consuetudo, -dinus f.:</b> custom
<b>ceterus, -a, -um (CL ceterus):</b> the other; the rest
<b>decretum, -i n.:</b> decree
<b>differo, differre, distuli, -dilatus:</b> differ
<b>fero, ferre, tuli, latus:</b> bring; wear
<b>idem, eadem, idem:</b> the same
<b>intermitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus:</b> interrupt
<b>mando, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> order

---

<b>ostendo, -ere, ostendi, - :</b> show; display
<b>peregrinus, -i m.:</b> pilgrim
<b>poena, -ae f.:</b> penalty
<b>praeter:</b> except (+ acc.)
<b>praeterea (adv.):</b> besides; in addition
<b>propono, -ponere, -posui, -positus:</b> propose
<b>publicus, -a, -um:</b> public
<b>quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam:</b> anybody, anything
<b>retineo, -ere, retinui, retentus:</b> hold back; delay
<b>solus, -a, -um:</b> alone
<b>sudarium, -i n.:</b> handkerchief; here Veronica's Veil
<b>tegmen, -minis n.:</b> covering
<b>tempus, temporis n.:</b> time
<b>vero (adv.):</b> truly; in fact

**intermissa ... consuetudine:** abl. abs.

**ostendendi sudarii:** gerundive, “of the cloth to be displayed (i.e. of displaying the cloth),” Veronica’s Veil was displayed once each year; Paul delayed the display to gather a crowd

**quo ... cerneretur:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that (by this) he might be seen”

**pluribus:** compar. adj. of *multus*; here substantive, “more (people)”

**eodem tempore:** abl. of time when

**ne ... videretur:** neg. purpose clause, “so that he alone not seem”

**proposita poena:** abl. abs.

**ne ... ferret:** ind. command dependent on *mandavit*

**quibus:** connecting rel. referring to the cardinals, “and to them”

primo pontificatus sui anno pannum eiusdem coloris dono dedit, quo equos vel mulas sternerent dum equitant. Voluit praeterea in decretum referre, ut galeri cardinalium ex serico coccineo fierent; sed id quominus decerneretur vetuere illi, qui bene sentientes, diminuendam esse Ecclesiae pompam non augendam cum detimento Christianae religionis praedicabant.

**annus, -i m.:** year

**augeo, -ere, auxi, auctus:** increase

**bene (adv.):** well

**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal

**Christianus, -a, -um:** Christian

**coccineus, -a, -um:** scarlet

**color, -oris m.:** color

**decerno, -ere, decrevi, decretus:** decide;

determine; vote

**decretum, -i n.:** decree; vote

**detrimentum, -i n.:** damage

**diminuo, -ere, -ui, -utus:** diminish

**donum, -i n.:** gift

**Ecclesia, -ae f.:** Church

**equito, -are, -avi, -atus:** ride (horseback)

**equus, -i m.:** horse

**fio, fieri, factus sum:** be made

**galerus, -i m.:** ceremonial wide-brimmed hat,  
symbol of the rank of cardinal

**idem, eadem, idem:** the same

**mula, -ae f.:** mule

**pannus, -i m.:** cloth, garment

**pompa, -ae f.:** procession; pomp

**pontificatus, -us m.:** pontificate

**praedico, -are, -avi, -atus:** declare

**praeterea (adv.):** besides; in addition

**primus, -a, -um:** first

**quominus:** that not, from

**refero, referre, rettuli, relatus:** bring back;  
refer

**religio, -onis f.:** religion

**sentio, -ire, sensi, sensus:** perceive; think

**sericum, -i n.:** silk

**sterno, -ere, stravi, stratus:** lay out; saddle

**veto, -are, -ui, -itus:** forbid

**volo, velle, volui, - :** want, wish

**primo ... anno:** abl. of time when

**pontificatus:** gen. sing. masc.

**dono dedit:** dat. of purpose, “gave as a gift”

**quo ... sternerent:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that (with it) they might saddle”

**in decretum referre:** that is, to refer the matter to a vote of the cardinals

**ut ... fierent:** ind. command

**id:** subj. of *decerneretur*, referring to the decree about the cardinals’ hats

**quominus decerneretur:** prevention clause, introduced by *vetuere*

**vetuere:** alt. form of *vetuerunt*

**illi:** subj. of *vetuere*, antecedent of *qui*

**diminuendam ... non augendam:** pass. periphrastic, “(pomp) ought to be diminished, not increased”

**cum detimento:** abl. of accompaniment, “with attendant damage to the Christian religion”

**Christiana religionis:** obj. gen. with *detimento*

*Paul had even promised summer palaces for all the cardinals, although he did not actually provide them*

**74** Ante pontificatum vero praedicare solebat, si sors unquam ei contigisset, singulis cardinalibus singula castella se donaturum, quo vitandi aestus urbani causa secedere percommode possent. Sed pontificatum adeptus, nil minus cogitavit.\*

---

**adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum:** gain,  
obtain  
**aestus, -us m.:** heat  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**castellum, -i n.:** castle  
**cogito, -are, -avi, -atus:** think  
**contingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tactus:** happen; be  
granted to  
**dono, -are, -avi, -atus:** give (gifts)  
**minus (adv.):** less  
**nil n. (indecl.):** nothing  
**percommodus, -a, -um:** very convenient,  
very comfortable

**pontificatus, -us m.:** pontificate  
**praedico, -are, -avi, -atus:** declare  
**secedo, -ere, cessi, secessus:** withdraw  
**singulus, -a, -um:** individual; one-a-piece  
**soleo, -ere, -itus sum:** be accustomed to  
**sors, sortis f.:** fate, fortune  
**unquam (CL *umquam*) (adv.):** at any time,  
ever; at some time  
**urbanus, -a, -um:** of the city; urban  
**vero (adv.):** truly, in fact  
**vito, -are, -avi, -atus:** avoid

---

**si ... contigisset:** protasis of a fut. more vivid cond. in ind. statement; after a main verb in secondary sequence, the fut. perf. indic. protasis becomes a pluperf. subjunctive.

**sors:** “the fate (of becoming pope)”

**se donaturum (esse):** apodosis of a cond. in ind. statement; the fut. inf. replaces what would be a fut. indic.

**quo ... possent:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that they might withdraw there”

**vitandi aestus urbani causa:** gerundive phrase, “for the sake of the urban heat to be avoided (i.e. for avoiding the urban heat)”

**pontificatum adeptus:** Platina implicitly suggests both that Paul bribed the cardinals to get elected, and that he did not even hold up his part of the bargain

**cogitavit\*:** Platina originally wrote, but then crossed out before printing: *Utinam non eos interdum sprevisset quos blanditiis in sententiam sui pellegerat* (“If only he had not sometimes scorned those whom he should have coaxed to his side with enticements”)

*Paul attempted to increase papal glory through influence and arms. The first example of the former is his mediation of a dispute between the Duke of Burgundy and the people of Liège*

**75** Pontificatus tamen maiestatem tum auctoritate tum armis augere conatus est. Nam Tricaricensem episcopum in Gallias misit, qui, cognita Leodiensium et ducis Burgundiae contentione, eos ad concordiam revocaret, sublato interdicto, quo Leodienses notati erant,

**arma, -orum** *n.*: arms

**auctoritas, -tatis** *f.*: authority

**augeo, -ere, auxi, auctus:** increase

**Burgundia, -ae** *f.*: Burgundy

**cognosco, -noscere, -novi, -nitus:** know; recognize

**concordia, -ae** *f.*: peace

**conor, -ari, -atus sum:** attempt

**contentio, -onis** *f.*: struggle

**dux, ducis** *m.*: leader; duke

**episcopus, -i** *m.*: bishop

**Gallia, -ae** *f.*: Gaul

**interdictum, -i** *n.*: prohibition

**Leodiensis, -e:** from Liège, in modern Belgium

**maiestas, -tatis** *f.*: greatness

**noto, -are, -avi, -atus:** mark; brand

**pontificatus, -us** *m.*: pontificate

**revoco, -are, -avi, -atus:** call back, recall

**tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatus:** lift; remove

**Tricaricensis, -e:** of Tricaro, a town in southern Italy

**Pontificatus:** gen. sing. masc.

**tum ... tum:** “not only ... but also”

**Tricaricensem episcopum:** Onofrio de Santa Croce (d. 1471), whom Paul sent to make peace between Charles I and Burgundy and the people of Liège. Onofrio failed, but commissioned humanist Angelo Sabino to write the epic *De excidio civitatis Leodiensis*

**Gallias:** pl. because several Gallic territories were each called *Gallia*

**qui ... revocaret:** rel. clause of purpose, “sent (him) who would recall (i.e. in order that he might recall)”

**cognita ... contentione:** abl. abs.

**Leodiensium:** gen. pl., a substantive for the people of Liège

**ducis Burgundiae:** Charles I (the Bold), r. 1467-1477

**sublato interdicto:** abl. abs.; an *interdictum* is a penalty forbidding the administration of certain sacraments

ob pulsum iniuria episcopum suum. Verum, dum Tricaricensis haec quam accurate agit, ut id ad solum pontificem pertinere ostenderet, a Leodiensibus cum eorum episcopo capitur. Hanc ob rem dux [393] Burgundiae inita pace cum Lodovico, Franciae rege (tum enim bellum inter se gerebant), adiuvante ipso rege, Leodienses gravissimis caedibus persecutus, eorum urbem tandem evertit et captos episcopos liberavit.

---

**accurate** (*adv.*): carefully; meticulously  
**adiupo, -are, adiuvi, adiutus**: help  
**ago, -ere, egi, actus**: act; manage  
**Burgundia, -ae** *f.*: Burgundy  
**caedes, -is** *f.*: slaughter, massacre  
**capio, -ere, cepi, captus**: seize; capture  
**dux, ducis** *m.*: leader; duke  
**episcopus, -i** *m.*: bishop  
**erproto, -ere, everti, eversus**: overturn; destroy  
**gero, -ere, gessi, gestus**: bear; wage war (+  
    *bellum*)  
**gravis, -e**: heavy; severe  
**ineo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus**: enter; begin  
**iniuria, -ae** *f.*: injustice

**Leodiensis, -e**: of or from Liège  
**libero, -are, -avi, -atus**: free  
**ostendo, -ere, ostendi, -** : show; make clear  
**pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsus**: drive out; banish  
**persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum**: take  
    vengeance on  
**pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus**: concerns,  
    pertains to  
**pontifex, pontificis** *m.*: pontiff, pope  
**solus, -a, -um**: only; alone  
**tandem** (*adv.*): finally  
**Tricaricensis, -e**: (the Bishop) of Tricaro  
**verum** (*conj.*): however

---

**ob pulsum ... episcopum**: “because of their bishop having been expelled (i.e. the expulsion of their bishop)”  
**iniuria**: abl. of manner; the preposition *cum* is often left out with this word  
**quam accurate**: “so carefully” (like *tam accurate*)  
**ut ... ostenderet**: result clause  
**a Leodiensibus**: abl. of agent, used as a substantive, “by the people of Liège”  
**capitur**: subj. is still Onofrio, Bishop of Tricarico  
**Lodovico, Franciae rege**: Louis XI, King of France (r. 1461-1483)  
**Leodienses**: acc. obj. of *persecutus*  
**persecutus**: agrees with *dux*

*The second example of an attempt to increase papal power through influence: Paul deposed the Hussite King of Bohemia; he unsuccessfully tried to replace him with Mathias Corvinus*

**76** Preterea vero {239v} Paulus, cognita regis Boemiae perfidia, in hominem Laurentio Roverella episcopo Ferrarensi legato ita Ungaros et Germanos concitavit, ut brevi et stirpem Georgii funditus sustulerit, et nomen haereticorum fuerit deleturus, ni Poloni, id regnum ad se pertinere dicentes, Matthiam Ungariae regem tenuissent bello laccessitum, quominus regno Boemiae potiretur.

**Boemia**, -ae f.: Bohemia

**brevi** (*adv.*): in a short time

**cognosco**, -**noscere**, -**novi**, -**nitus**: know;  
learn

**concito**, -**are**, -**avi**, -**atus**: rouse

**deleo**, -**ere**, -**evi**, -**etus**: destroy

**episcopus**, -**i** m.: bishop

**Ferrarensis**, -**e**: of Ferrara, a city in northern  
Italy

**funditus** (*adv.*): utterly, completely

**Germani**, -**orum** m.: the Germans

**haereticus**, -**i** m.: heretic

**lacesso**, -**ere**, -**ivi**, -**itus**: provoke; harass

**legatus**, -**i** m.: envoy

**ni** (*adv.*): if ... not

**perfidia**, -**ae** f.: faithlessness; heresy

**pertineo**, -**tinere**, -**tinui**, -**tentus**: concerns,  
pertains to

**Poloni**, -**orum** m.: the Poles

**potior**, -**iri**, -**itus sum**: obtain; become master  
of

**preterea** (CL *praeterea*) (*adv.*): in addition

**quominus**: that not, from

**regnum**, -**i** n.: kingdom

**stirps**, **stirpis** f.: stock; stem; family

**teneo**, -**ere**, **tenui**, **tentus**: hold, keep

**tollo**, -**ere**, **sustuli**, **sublatus**: lift; remove

**Ungari**, -**orum** m.: the Hungarians

**Ungaria**, -**ae** f.: Hungary

**vero** (*adv.*): in fact

**regis Boemiae**: George of Podebrady, King of Bohemia (r. 1457-1471)

**perfidia**: George was a Hussite

**in hominem**: that is, against King George

**Laurentio ... legato**: abl. abs.

**Laurentio Roverella episcopo Ferrarensi**: Lorenzo Roverella, Bishop of Ferrara  
1460-1474

**stirpem Georgii funditus sustulerit**: result clause; the expression suggests weeding,  
pulling out the whole stock from the root

**fuerit deleturus**: perf. subjunctive (with fut. pple.) in result clause

**ni ... tenuissent**: protasis of past contrafactual cond.

**Poloni ... dicentes**: George had named as his successor the King of Poland's son; thus  
the Poles fought to keep Corvinus from taking Bohemia

**id regnum**: that is, Bohemia

**Matthiam Ungariae**: Matthias Corvinus, King of Hungary (r. 1458-1490)

**quominus ... potiretur**: prevention clause dependent on *tenuissent*

*First example of an attempt to increase papal power through arms: Paul unsuccessfully besieged Tolfa before buying its loyalty*

77 Duo tamen bella et quidem parva in Italia suscepit, quae, nulla re prius repetita bello sed insidiis primo incohata, postea deseruit\*. Cum igitur Tolphae veteris dominos insidiis primo, mox armis (cum id non cessisset), duce Vianesio aggressus esset, obsideturque locum et oppugnaret, supervenientibus regiis copiis, quae a bello,

---

**aggreder, aggredi, aggressus sum (CL**

*aggressus sum*): approach; attack

**arma, -orum n.:** arms

**cedo, -ere, cessi, cессus:** yield

**copia, -ae f.:** abundance; troops (*pl.*)

**desero, -ere, deserui, desertus:** abandon

**dominus, -i m.:** lord

**duo, -ae, -o:** two

**dux, ducis m.:** leader

**igitur:** therefore

**incoho, -are, -avi, -atus:** begin

**insidiae, -arum f.:** ambush; plot

**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy

**locus, -i m.:** place

**mox (adv.):** soon, next

**nullus, -a, -um:** no; none

**obsideo, -ere, obsedi, obsessus:** besiege

**oppugno, -are, -avi, -atus:** attack

**postea (adv.):** afterwards

**primo (adv.):** at first, in the first place

**prius (adv.):** previously, first

**regius, -a, -um:** royal

**repeto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** demand back

**supervenio, -venire, -veni, -ventus:** arrive

**suscipio, -cipere, -cepisti (CL suscepit), -ceptus:**  
undertake

**Tolpha, -ae f.:** Tolfa, a town in central Italy

**vetus, veteris:** old

---

**quae ... deseruit:** that is, Paul could walk away from the wars without losing face  
because he was not openly demanding the return of something, but rather secretly  
pursuing his ends

**nulla re ... repetita ... incohata:** abl. abs.

**bello:** abl. of means

**insidiis:** abl. of means

**deseruit\*:** Platina originally wrote and then later crossed out before printing: ... *turpiter deseruit, parvi siquidem animi erat, licet ambitione vasti haberetur; praeterea etiam avaritia laborabat. Quae homines a rebus gerendis, et quidem magnis, retrahunt* ("which he shamefully deserted since he was a man of little spirit, although he was thought to be of great spirit because of his ambition; moreover, he also suffered because of his greed. Such things keep men back from accomplishing things, and in particular great things")

**Cum ... aggressus esset, obsideturque ... et oppugnaret:** circumstantial *cum* clause  
**id:** the town of Tolfa, important because of its alum mines

**duce Vianesio:** abl. abs.; Vianesio Albergati of Bologna, Paul's vice-chamberlain;  
Platina originally added *suo cum grege lenonum* ("with his flock of pimps")

**regiis copiis:** royal; that is, from the kingdom of Naples

**quae a bello:** antecedent of *quae is copiis*; this clause, interrupted by another rel.  
clause, lacks a verb; Platina presumably meant to add something like *reveniebant*

quod in Flamminea contra Bartholemeum Bergomatem gestum esse diximus, quo in exercitu Ursini militabant, repente effusa fuga obsidionem deserit, cum amplius sexaginta millibus passuum hostes abessent. Atque ita Tolpham post longam contentionem, qua etiam Ursinos sibi inimicos ac prope hostes fecerat, decem et septem

**absum, abesse, afui, afuturus:** be away,  
distant

**amplius** (*adv.*): greater; more

**contentio, -onis** *f.*: struggle

**contra:** against (+ *acc.*)

**decem** (*indecl.*): ten

**desero, -ere, deserui, desertus:** abandon

**effusus, -a, -um:** disorderly

**exercitus, -us** *m.*: army

**Flamminea, -ae** (*CL Flaminia*) *f.*: the region  
around the Via Flaminia, near Rimini in  
northern Italy

**fuga, -ae** *f.*: flight

**gero, -ere, gessi, gestus:** bear; wage (+  
*bellum*)

**hostis, -is** *m./f.*: enemy (of the state)

**inimicus, -a, -um:** hostile to

**longus, -a, -um:** long

**milito, -are, -avi, -atus:** serve as soldier

**mille, millia** *n.*: thousand (CL abl. *milibus*)

**obsidio, -onis** *f.*: siege; blockade

**passus, -us** *m.*: step

**prope** (*adv.*): nearly

**repente** (*adv.*): suddenly

**septem** (*indecl.*): seven

**sexaginta** (*indecl.*): sixty

**Tolpha, -ae** *f.*: Tolfa, a fortress in central Italy

**Ursini, -orum** *m.*: the Orsini, an aristocratic  
Roman family

**quod ... diximus:** ch. 39-40; the Neapolitan forces, along with Milan, were helping  
Florence fight off Bartolomeo Colleoni and the Venetians

**Bartholemeun Bergomatem:** Bartolomeo Colleoni, an Italian *condottiero* who  
changed sides multiple times and fought for both the Sforza and the Venetians.  
Ultimately, he was appointed captain-general of the Republic of Venice for life in  
1455

**effusa fuga:** abl. of means, “in a disorderly flight”

**deserit:** main verb

**cum ... abessent:** concessive *cum* clause

**sexaginta millibus:** abl. of comparison, more “than sixty thousand” (of) steps; i.e.  
sixty miles

**Tolpham:** acc. obj. of *emit*; Paul ultimately bought Tolfa in 1469

**qua:** abl. of means; antecedent is *contentionem*

**sibi:** dat. with *inimicos*

**decem et septem millibus:** abl. of price, 17,000

millibus nummum auri emit, familiae Ursinae potentiam veritus,  
quae dominis loci affinitate coniuncta erat.

*Second example of an attempt to increase papal power through arms: Paul besieged Rimini but failed to take it due to his stinginess in paying soldiers and his indecisiveness*

**78** Hisdem quoque [394] artibus Robertum Malatestam Sigismundi mortui filium aggressus, cum etiam dolo suburbium Ariminense cepisset, urbemque aliquandiu oppugnasset, Laurentio Spalatrensi archiepiscopo tantum negotium procurante, superveniente

---

**affinitas, -tatis** *f.*: relationship by marriage  
**agredior, aggredi, aggressus sum:** attack  
**aliquandiu** (CL *aliquamdiu*) (*adv.*): for some time  
**archiepiscopus, -i** *m.*: archbishop  
**Ariminensis, -e:** of Rimini  
**ars, artis** *f.*: craft; method  
**aurum, -i** *n.*: gold  
**capiro, -ere, cepi** (CL *cepi*), **captus:** seize  
**coniungo, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctus:** join  
**dolus, -i** *m.*: deceit, trickery  
**dominus, -i** *m.*: lord  
**emo, -ere, emi, emptus:** buy  
**familia, -ae** *f.*: family  
**idem, eadem, idem:** same

---

**locus, -i** *m.*: place  
**mille, millia** *n.*: thousand (CL abl. *milibus*)  
**negocium, -i** (CL *negotium*) *n.*: business, activity  
**nummus, -i** *m.*: coin  
**oppugno, -are, -avi, -atus:** besiege  
**potentia, -ae** *f.*: power  
**proculo, -are, -avi, -atus:** manage  
**Spalat(r)ensis, -e:** of Split, in modern Croatia  
**suburbium, -i** *n.*: suburb  
**supervenio, -venire, -veni, -ventus:** arrive  
**Ursinus, -a, -um:** of the Orsini  
**vereor, -eri, -itus sum:** fear

---

**nummum:** gen. pl., syncopated from *numm(or)um*

**auri:** gen. of material

**familiae Ursinae:** the Orsini family

**dominis:** dat. with *coniuncta*

**loci:** gen. sing., dependent on *dominis*

**Hisdem:** CL *isdem* (abl. pl.)

**Robertum Malatestam:** Roberto Malatesta (1441-1484) of Rimini, *condottiero* and illegitimate son of Sigismundo

**Sigismundi:** Sigismundo Pandolfo Malatesta (1417-1468), Lord of Rimini and *condottiero*

**cum ... cepisset ... oppugnasset:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**Laurentio Spalat(r)ensi archiepiscopo:** Lorenzo Zanni, Archbishop of Split 1452-1473

postea Foederico comite Urbinati cum regio ac Florentini populi exercitu, et obsidionem relinquere coactus est, et fuso turpiter ac fugato eius exercitu, pacem turpi etiam conditione initam non renuit. Affirmat Laurentius potiundi Arimini opportunitatem amissam esse, dum avare nimium stipendia militibus persolvit, dumque ignoratione rerum et tarditate ingenii, rem ipsam quae momento temporis colligitur, in bello potissimum, in longum dicit.

**affirmo, -are, -avi, -atus:** affirm  
**amitto, -ere, amisi, amissus:** lose  
**avare:** greedily; stingily  
**cogo, -ere, coegi, coactus:** force, compel  
**colligo, -ere, collegi, collectus:** bring together; compress  
**comes, comitis m.:** companion; count  
**conditio, -onis (CL condicio) f.:** agreement  
**exercitus, -us m.:** army  
**Florentinus, -a, -um:** Florentine, of Florence  
**fugo, -are, -avi, -atus:** put to flight  
**fundo, -ere, fudi, fusus:** pour; rout  
**ignoratio, -onis f.:** ignorance  
**ineo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** enter; undertake  
**ingenium, -i n.:** nature, character  
**longus, -a, -um:** long  
**miles, militis m.:** soldier  
**momentum, -i n.:** moment

**nimum (adv.):** excessively  
**obsidio, -onis f.:** siege  
**opportunitas, -tatis f.:** opportunity  
**pax, pacis f.:** peace  
**persolvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutus:** pay off  
**populus, -i m.:** people, nation  
**postea (adv.):** afterwards  
**potior, -iri, -itus sum:** obtain; capture  
**potissimum (adv.):** especially  
**regius, -a, -um:** royal  
**relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictus:** abandon  
**renuo, renuere, renui, - :** to refuse  
**stipendum, -i n.:** (military) wages  
**tarditas, -tatis f.:** slowness  
**tempus, temporis n.:** time  
**turpis, -e:** disgraceful  
**turpiter (adv.):** disgracefully  
**Urbinatis, -e:** of Urbino

**Foederico comite Urbinati:** Federico da Montefeltro (1422-1482), condottiero and a major patron of humanists

**cum regio ... exercitu:** “with the royal army and that of the Florentine people”; the royal army is that of Naples

**fuso ... fugato ... exercitu:** abl. abs.

**potiundi Arimini:** gerundive phrase “of Rimini to be seized (i.e. of seizing Rimini)”

**amissam esse:** ind. statement; acc. subj. is *opportunitatem*

**dum ... dumque:** *dum* here with a circumstantial sense verging on causal

**ignoratione ... et tarditate:** abls. of cause

**momento:** abl. of time when

**in longum ducit:** “to prolong”; acc. obj. of *ducit* is *rem ipsam*

*Paul had a hesitant nature, which he himself valued but which ultimately proved harmful*

**79** Natura enim in rebus agendis ita praeposterus Paulus erat, ut <non> nisi fatigatus, rem quantumvis claram et apertam incoharet, aut incohata perficeret\*. Quanquam ipse iactare solebat id sibi in multis usui fuisse, cum in pluribus, si verum fateri volamus, sibi ac Romanae Ecclesiae id admodum nocuisset.

*Paul was aggressive in collecting money, and his actions sometimes verged on simony*

**80** In colligendis autem pecuniis ita diligens fuit, ut fere semper beneficia et episcopatus his committeret, qui officium aliquod [395]

---

<b>admodum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): certainly	<b>iacto, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> boast
<b>ago, -ere, egi, actus:</b> do	<b>incho, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> begin
<b>aliqui, -qua, -quod:</b> some	<b>noceo, -ere, -ui, -itus:</b> harm (+ <i>dat.</i> )
<b>apertus, -a, -um:</b> open; obvious	<b>officium, -i n.:</b> duty; office
<b>beneficium, -i n.:</b> favor; benefice (fief)	<b>perficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus:</b> complete
<b>clarus, -a, -um:</b> clear	<b>plus, pluris:</b> more
<b>colligo, -ere, collegi, collectus:</b> collect	<b>praeposterus, -a, -um:</b> backwards; absurd
<b>committo, -mittere, -misi, -missus:</b> entrust	<b>quanquam</b> (CL <i>quamquam</i> ): although
<b>diligens, -entis:</b> diligent	<b>quantumvis</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): to as great a degree as you like
<b>Ecclesia, -ae f.:</b> Church	
<b>episcopatus, -us m.:</b> bishopric	<b>usus, -us m.:</b> use; advantage
<b>fateor, -eri, fassus sum:</b> admit	<b>verum, -i n.:</b> truth
<b>fatigo, -are, -avi, -atus:</b> weary; harass	<b>volo, velle, volui, -:</b> wish; be willing
<b>fere</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ): almost	

---

**Natura:** abl. of cause “by nature”

**perficeret\*:** Platina originally wrote and then later crossed out before printing: *perficeret, quod erat parvi animi signum et consilii non multi* (“this was a sign that he was a man of small mind and not much sense”)

**id:** referring to his hesitant nature

**in multis ... in pluribus:** “in many things ... in more things”

**usui:** dat. of purpose, “of use”

**cum ... nocuisset:** concessive *cum* clause

**In colligendis ... pecuniis:** gerundive phrase, “in money to be collected (i.e. in collecting money)”

**ut ... committeret:** result clause

**episcopatus:** acc. pl.

**qui ... haberent:** rel. clause of characteristic; antecedent is *his*

venale haberent, unde elici munus posset. Omnia enim officia suo tempore venalia erant, quam ob rem factum est, ut qui episcopatum aut beneficium vellet, officium aliquod emeret, quo lenocinio quod vellet consequeretur, superatis competitoribus omnibus, doctrina et probitate vitae quovis magistratu et honore dignis. Preterea vero cum episcopatus vacaret, quo plures annatae eodem tempore solverentur, digniores, ut ipse praedicabat, ad uberiores episcopatus movens,

**aliqui, -qua, -quod:** some  
**annata, -ae f.:** annate, a tax on a benefice  
**beneficium, -i n.:** favor; benefice  
**competitor, -oris m.:** competitor  
**consequor, -sequi, -secutus sum:** attain  
**dignus, -a, -um:** worthy, worthy of (+ abl.)  
**doctrina, -ae f.:** education  
**elicio, -ere, -ui, -itus:** draw out, elicit  
**emo, -ere, emi, emptus:** buy  
**episcopatus, -us m.:** bishopric  
**fio, fieri, factus sum:** happen  
**honor, -oris m.:** honor; public office  
**lenocinium, -i n.:** enticement  
**magistratus, -us m.:** magistracy; office  
**moveo, -ere, movi, motus:** move  
**munus, -eris n.:** gift

**officium, -i n.:** duty; office  
**plus, pluris:** more  
**praedico, -are, -avi, -atus:** declare  
**preterea (CL praeterea) (adv.):** in addition  
**probitas, -tatis f.:** uprightness  
**quivis, quaevis, quodvis:** any at all  
**sollo, -ere, solvi, solutus:** pay off  
**supero, -are, -avi, -atus:** overcome  
**tempus, -oris n.:** time  
**uber, uberis:** fertile, rich  
**unde (adv.):** from where, whence  
**vaco, -are, -avi, -atus:** be vacant  
**venalis, -e:** for sale  
**vero (adv.):** in fact  
**volo, velle, volui, - : wish, want**

**officium ... venale:** a venal office, a job whose holder had to pay to obtain it

**unde ... posset:** subjunctive by attraction

**elici:** pres. pass. inf., complementary with *posset*

**factum est:** subject is the following *ut* clause

**ut ... emeret:** substantive *ut* clause, subject of *factum est*

**qui ... vellet:** rel. clause of characteristic; antecedent is assumed *is*, subject of *emeret*

**quo ... consequeretur:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that by this enticement he might attain”

**superatis competitoribus:** abl. abs.

**omnibus ... dignis:** “all, although worthy”

**doctrina et probitate:** abls. of cause

**quovis magistratu et honore:** abl. with *dignis*

**cum ... vacaret:** circumstantial *cum* clause

**quo ... solverentur:** rel. clause of purpose, “in order that (by this) more annates might be paid”

**digniores:** compar. of *dignus*, here acc. pl. obj. of *movens*

**uberiores episcopatus:** acc. pl.

magnam pecuniarum vim undique colligebat. Redimendarum quoque {240R} pensionum usum non improbavit\*.

*Paul used his money liberally, caring for those in need and assuring necessary supplies for Rome*

**81** His autem pecuniis interdum etiam ad liberalitatem utebatur. Nam et cardinales pauperes maxime, et episcopos, et principes, ac nobiles domo extores, virgines, viduas, aegrotos frequenter iuvabat. Curavit item ut Romae annona [396] ceteraque ad victimum pertinentia vilius quam antea venderentur.

**aegrotus, -a, -um:** sick  
**annona, -ae f.:** grain supply  
**antea (adv.):** before  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**colligo, -ere, collegi, collectus:** collect  
**curo, -are, -avi, -atus:** take care of  
**ceterus, -a, -um (CL ceterus):** the other  
**domus, -i f.:** home  
**episcopus, -i m.:** bishop  
**extorris, -is, -e:** exiled  
**frequenter (adv.):** frequently  
**improbo, -are, -avi, -atus:** disapprove of  
**interdum (adv.):** sometimes  
**item (adv.):** likewise; also  
**iupo, -are, iuvi, iutus:** help  
**liberalitas, -tatis f.:** generosity  
**nobilis, -e:** noble

**pauper, -eris:** poor  
**pensio, -onis f.:** pension; salary  
**pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus:** concern, pertain to  
**princeps, -cipis m.:** leader; prince  
**redimo, -ere, redemi, redemptus:** buy back; redeem  
**Roma, -ae f.:** Rome  
**undique (adv.):** from everywhere  
**usus, -us m.:** use  
**utor, uti, usus sum:** use (+ abl.)  
**vendo, -ere, vendidi, venditus:** sell  
**victus, -us m.:** living; nourishment  
**viduus, -a, -um:** widowed  
**vilis, -e:** cheap  
**virgo, -ginis f.:** young woman  
**vis, vis f.:** strength; abundance (+ gen.)

**Redimendarum ... pensionum:** gerundive phrase, “of pensions to be redeemed (i.e. of redeeming pensions);” Platina used this sentence to replace the following: ... colligebat. Neque hoc contentus, seorsum etiam ab his quos pecuniosos intellexerat aliquid emungebat in usus cruciatae, ut ipse dicebat (“And not content with this, he would separately also fleece away from those he understood to be rich something for use on the crusade, as he himself used to say”)

**ad liberalitatem:** “for generosity”; Platina originally added *et largitionem* (“and bribery”)

**maxime:** superl. adv. of *magnus*; here with sense of “especially”

**Curavit ... venderentur:** This entire phrase is lacking in V; Platina added it in the margin of A and F, where it replaced the phrase *Et in se aliquid principum auctoritate molientes pecunia strangulabat* (“and he would smother with money those plotting against him by authority of princes”)

**ut ... venderentur:** substantive *ut* clause, obj. of *Curavit*

**Romae:** locative, or possibly gen. with *annona*

**vilius:** compar. adv. of *vilis*

*Paul also used his money for building projects and popular entertainments*

**82** Aedificavit etiam splendide ac magnifice tum apud Sanctum Marcum, tum vero in Vaticano. Quod ad munificentiam pertinet, venationem quoque miro apparatu edidit duci Ferrariensi in campo Merulae. Huic autem praefuit eius ex sorore nepos S. Luciae cardinalis, quem una cum Baptista Zeno altero nepote cardinales ante creaverat.

*Paul was nocturnal and difficult to deal with*

**83** Adire hominem die dormientem ac noctu vigilantem, [397] attractantem gemmas et margaritas, difficile erat, nec nisi post

---

**adeo, -ire, -ivi(ii), -itus:** approach; have an audience with  
**aedifico, -are, -avi, -atus:** build  
**apparatus, -us m.:** preparation; splendor  
**atrecto, -are, -avi, -atus:** touch; grope  
**campus, -i m.:** field  
**cardinalis, -is m.:** cardinal  
**creo, -are, -avi, -atus:** create; appoint  
**dies, diei m.f.:** day  
**difficilis, -e:** difficult  
**dormio, -ire, -ivi, -itus:** sleep  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader; duke  
**edo, -ere, edidi, editus:** produce; sponsor  
**Ferrariensis, -e:** of Ferrara  
**gemma, -ae f.:** gem  
**magnifice (adv.):** magnificently  
**margarita, -ae f.:** pearl

**Merula, -ae f.:** Merlo, a field near Magliana  
**mirus, -a, -um:** wonderful  
**munificentia, -ae f.:** munificence  
**nepos, -otis m./f.:** nephew  
**noctu (adv.):** at night  
**pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus:** concerns, pertains to  
**praesum, -esse, -fui, -futurus:** be in charge (+ dat.)  
**sanc tus, -i m.:** saint  
**splendide (adv.):** splendidly  
**una (adv.):** together  
**Vaticanus, -i m.:** the Vatican  
**venatio, -onis f.:** a hunt  
**vero (adv.):** truly  
**vigilo, -are, -avi, -atus:** remain awake

---

**tum ... tum:** “not only ... but also”

**Sanctum Marcum:** a church near modern Piazza Venezia; also the name of Paul’s palace adjoining this church, now called Palazzo Venezia (see fig. 3, p. 72)

**Vaticano:** Vatican hill, the site of St. Peter’s basilica

**Quod ... pertinet:** “(A thing) which ... pertains,” a noun clause in apposition to the following clause

**duci Ferrariensi:** Borso D’Este, whom Paul made Duke of Ferrara in 1471

**Huic:** the hunt

**nepos:** Giovanni Michiel (1446-1503)

**S. Luciae:** Santa Lucia in Septisolio, a church near the Septizodium

**Baptista Zeno:** Giovanni Battista Zeno (d. 1501)

**ante:** they were made cardinals in 1468; the hunt was in 1471

**Adire:** subject of *difficile erat*

**die:** abl. of time within which

**nec nisi:** “nor (was it possible) except”

multas vigilias: quodsi tibi patuissent fores, audire hominem non audiri ab homine necesse erat, adeo copiosus in dicendo habebatur. Morosus erat et difficilis, tum domesticis, tum externis; et saepe quod promiserat mutata sententia invertebat. Volebat videri astutus rebus in omnibus; hanc ob rem perplexe nimium interdum loquebatur. Quare amicitias principum ac populorum non diu servavit, quod variarum partium haberetur.

**adeo** (*adv.*): so; to such a degree

**amicitia, -ae f.**: friendship

**astutus, -a, -um**: expert

**audio, -ire, -ivi, -itus**: hear; listen to

**copiosus, -a, -um**: abundant

**difficilis, -e**: difficult

**diu** (*adv.*): for a long time

**domesticus, -i m.**: household member

**externus, -a, -um**: external; those outside

**foris, -is f.**: door

**interdum** (*adv.*): sometimes

**inverto, -ere, inverti, inversus**: reverse

**loquor, loqui, locutus sum**: speak

**morosus, -a, -um**: hard to please

**muto, -are, -avi, -atus**: change

**necesse** (*undeclined*): necessary

**nimum** (*adv.*): excessively

**pars, partis f.**: part; faction

**pateo, -ere, -ui, -** : be open

**perplexus, -a, -um**: cryptic

**populus, -i m.**: people, nation

**princeps, principis m.**: leader; prince

**promitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus**: promise

**quare** (*adv.*): for this reason

**quodsi**: but if, and if

**sententia, -ae f.**: opinion

**servo, -are, -avi, -atus**: keep, preserve

**varius, -a, -um**: various

**vigilia, -ae f.**: vigil, time awake at night

**volo, velle, volui, -** : want, wish

**quodsi ... patuissent ... erat**: past contrafactual; apodosis often indic. in expressions of necessity

**audire ... non audiri**: Paul would do all the talking

**dicendo**: abl. gerund

**tum ... tum**: “both ... and”

**quod promiserat**: antecedent is assumed *id, acc. obj.* of *invertebat*

**videri**: “seem”; complementary inf. with *Volebat*

**quod ... haberetur**: clause of alleged reason, “on the grounds that he was considered to be (a member) of various factions”

**variарum partium**: gen. of description

*Paul had peculiar tastes in food, which might have contributed to his death*

**84** Varia ciborum genera sibi apponi volebat, et peiora quaeque semper degustabat. Clamabat interdum, nisi quae expetebat ex sententia ei apposita fuissent. Bibacissimus quidem erat, sed vina admodum parva et diluta bibebat. Peponum esu, cancrorum, pastillorum, piscium, succidiae admodum delectabatur. Quibus ex rebus ortam crediderim apoplexiam illam, qua e vita sublatus est. Nam duos pepones et quidem praegrandes comederat eo die, quo sequenti nocte mortuus est.

**admodum** (*adv.*): exceedingly

**apoplexia, -ae f.**: apoplexy, stroke

**appono, -ere, apposui, appositus**: set before;

serve up

**bibax, -acis**: given to drinking

**bibo, -ere, bibi, bibitus**: drink

**cancer, cancri m.**: crab

**cibus, -i m.**: food

**clamo, -are, -avi, -atus**: cry out

**comedo, -ere, comedi, comedestus**: eat up;

devour

**degusto, -are, -avi, -atus**: taste; sample

**delecto, -are, -avi, -atus**: delight

**dies, diei m./f.**: day

**dilutus, -a, -um**: diluted

**duo, -ae, -o**: two

**esus, -us m.**: eating

**expeto, -ere, -ivi, -itus**: demand; desire

**genus, -eris n.**: type

**interdum** (*adv.*): sometimes

**nox, noctis f.**: night

**orior, -iri, ortus sum**: arise

**pastillus, -i m.**: pastry

**pepo, -onis m.**: melon

**piscis, -is m.**: fish

**praegrandis, -e**: very large

**quisque, quaeque, quodque**: each

**sententia, -ae f.**: opinion

**sequens, sequentis**: following

**succidia, -ae f.**: leg of pork; bacon

**tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatus**: lift; remove

**varius, -a, -um**: different; diverse

**vinum, -i n.**: wine

**volo, velle, volui, -** : want

**sibi**: dat. with *apponi*

**apponi**: pass. inf.

**peiora quaeque**: “each (of the) worst things”

**nisi**: the negation is taken closely with *apposita fuissent*

**quae**: antecedent is an assumed *ea* (n. pl.), subject of *apposita fuissent*

**ex sententia**: according to his wish

**Peponum ... succidiae**: a series of obj. genitives dependent on *esu*

**esu**: abl. of means

**ortam (esse) ... apoplexiā**: ind. statement

**crediderim**: potential subjunctive, the perf. is pres. time but completed aspect

**qua**: abl. of means; antecedent is *apoplexiā*

**eo die**: abl. of time when

**quo sequenti nocte**: two abls. of time when; same day “on which he died on the following night”

*Paul was considered to be just and merciful*

**85** Iustus tamen est habitus et clemens\*. Plerosque autem latrones poena carceris ad sanitatem redigere conatus est: fures, parricidas, perfidos, periuros.

---

**cacer,** -eris *m.*: prison  
**clemens, clementis:** merciful  
**conor, -ari, -atus sum:** attempt  
**fur, furis** *m./f.*: thief  
**iustus, -a, -um:** just, fair  
**latro, -onis** *m.*: brigand  
**parricida, -ae** *m./f.*: murderer of near relative  
**perfidus, -a, -um:** treacherous; heretic

**periurus, -a, -um:** perjurer, liar  
**plerosque, -aque, -umque** (*CL plerusque*):  
the majority, most  
**poena, -ae** *f.*: penalty  
**redigo, -ere, redigi, redactus:** drive back;  
return  
**sanitas, -tatis** *f.*: sanity; reason

---

**est habitus:** “he was considered (to be)”

**clemens\*:** Platina originally wrote and then later crossed out a different ending for the chapter: *clemens, si non est genus iniustitiae homines ob levem etiam causam in vinculis macerare. Nam cum addubitatum esset maiorne morte habenda esset poena diurni carceris, parem esse censuere sacri canones. Cum, inquiunt, ultimo supplicio clericus capitali crimine convictus tradi non possit, perpetuo carceri adiudicandus est, quem duximus morti simillimum esse. In latrones, tamen, fures, parricidas, perfidos, peiuros clemens quos in carcerem tanquam in ergastula mittebat; qui postea tanquam fametici leones e cavea missi in optimum quenquam crassarentur* (“if it is not a kind of injustice to wear men down in chains for even a trivial cause. For although it has been doubted whether long imprisonment should be considered a greater penalty than death, the sacred canons have judged them to be equal. Since, they say, a cleric convicted of a capital crime may not be handed over for the ultimate punishment, he must be sentenced to perpetual incarceration, which we have judged to be most similar to death. He was merciful, nevertheless, to brigands, thieves, parricides, heretics, and perjurers, whom he would send into jail as if into a workhouse. They, afterwards, released like starving lions from a cage, raged against every decent man.”)

**Plerosque ... latrones:** acc. obj. of *redigere*

**poena carceris:** abl. of means and appositional gen., “with the punishment of prison”; Paul chose not to use the death penalty

*Paul discouraged humanistic education, favoring only practical literacy*

**86** Humanitatis autem studia ita oderat et contemnebat [398]  
ut eius studiosos uno nomine haereticos appellaret. Hanc ob rem  
Romanos adhortabatur ne filios diutius in studiis litterarum versari  
paterentur; satis esse si legere et scribere didicissent.

---

**adhortor, -ari, -atus sum:** urge

**appello, -are, -avi, -atus:** call

**contemno, -ere, contempti, contemptus:**

despise

**disco, -ere, didici, -i :** learn

**diu (adv.):** for a long time

**haereticus, -i m.:** heretic

**humanitas, -tatis f.:** culture, civilization

**lego, -ere, legi, lectus:** read

**litterae, -arum f.:** letters; literature

**odi, odisse, -, - :** to hate

**patior, pati, passus sum:** allow

**satis (adv.):** enough

**scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptus:** write

**studiosus, -a, -um:** devoted to

**studium, -i n.:** eagerness; study

**versor, -ari, -atus sum:** spend time

**Humanitatis ... studia:** the humanities; humanistic education; Platina had originally written that Paul hated *Litteratos* ("the educated")

**oderat:** pluperf. form but imperf. meaning

**eius studiosos:** obj. gen., "devoted to it"; the *eius* should be *eorum*, referring to *studia*, but Platina is treating the humanities as conceptually singular

**haereticos:** a reference to Platina's own imprisonment, and esp. ch. 65 above

**ne ... paterentur:** ind. command; verb is imperf. subjunctive

**diutius:** compar. adv.

**satis esse:** ind. statement with no explicit verb setting it up; rather, it is suggested that this conveys the substance of his exhortation

**si ... didicissent:** subjunctive in a subordinate clause in ind. statement

*Paul could be unkind to those asking favors, but he ultimately delivered more than he had promised*

**87** Durus interdum et inexorabilis, si quid ab eo peteres, habebatur; neque hoc contentus, convicia et probra in te coniiciebat\*; plura tamen praestabat quam vultu facturum prae se ferret.

---

**coniicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectus:** throw/pile  
together  
**contentus, -a, -um:** content (+ *abl.*)  
**convicium, -i n.:** noise; reprimand; abuse  
**durus, -a, -um:** hard; harsh  
**fero, ferre, tuli, latus:** bear; say  
**inexorabilis, -e:** inexorable

**interdum (adv.):** sometimes  
**peto, -ere, -ivi, -itus:** ask (for)  
**praet:** before, in front of (+ *abl.*)  
**praesto, -are, -avi, -atus:** fulfill; carry out  
**probrum, -i n.:** disgrace; insult  
**vultus, -us m.:** face, expression

---

**si quid ... peteres:** cond. is mixed, with hypothetical protasis and factual apodosis, “if you were asking for ... anything”; note *quid* (after *si*, *nisi*, *num* and *ne*, “*ali*” takes a holiday)

**habebatur:** “was considered (to be)”

**coniiciebat\*:** Platina originally wrote and then later crossed out before printing:  
*coniiciebat; simultatum antiquarum memor iniurias ulciscebatur; plura* (“Mindful of old rivalries, he would avenge any injuries”)

**plura tamen ... se ferret:** in the manuscripts, Platina added this phrase in the margins

**plura:** acc. pl. neut. compar. of *multus*, here substantively “more (things)”

**quam:** “than”

**vultu:** abl. of means

**facturum:** ind. statement introduced by *ferret*; he actually does more than his expression suggests that he would when one is in his presence

*Paul kept his underlings in check, which was appreciated by the Romans and the court*

**88** Uno tamen postremo laudari potest, quod domi monstra non aluerit, quodque domesticos suos et familiares in officio continuerit, ne ob fastum et insolentiam populo Romano et aulicis stomachum facerent.

---

**alo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** nourish, rear

**aulicus, -i m.:** courtier

**contineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus:** preserve; restrain

**domesticus, -i m.:** household member

**familiaris, -is m./f.:** household member

**fastus, -us m.:** arrogance

**insolentia, -ae f.:** insolence

**laudo, -are, -avi, -atus:** praise

**monstrum, -i n.:** monster

**officium, -i n.:** office; rightful place

**populus, -i m.:** people

**postremus, -a, -um:** final

**stomachus, -i m.:** annoyance, anger

---

**quod ... aluerit:** noun clause, “the fact that,” in apposition to the substantive *Uno ...*

*postremo*

**domi:** locative

**quodque ... continuerit:** a noun clause coordinated with the previous one, “and the fact that ...”

**ne ... facerent:** neg. purpose clause





## Common Vocabulary



## Common Vocabulary

### A a

- ab, a:** by, from (+ *abl.*)  
**ac:** and, and also  
**ad:** to, up to, towards (+ *acc.*), see also Introduction 7.B  
**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another  
**alter, -a, -um:** one (of two), another, other  
**ante:** (*adv.*) before, previously; before, in front of (+ *acc.*)  
**apud:** at, near, in the presence of, in the home of (+ *acc.*)  
**at:** but  
**aut:** or  
**autem:** however; moreover

### B b

- bellum, -i n.:** a war, combat  
**bellus, -a, -um:** beautiful, excellent  
**bonus, -a, -um:** good

### C c

- causa, -ae f.:** a cause, reason; for the sake of (+ *gen.*)  
**cum:** with (*prep. + abl.*); when (+ *indic.*); when, since, although (+ *subjunctive*)  
**credo, -ere, credidi, creditus:** believe

### D d

- de:** down from, about, concerning (+ *abl.*)  
**dico, -ere, dixi, dictus:** to say  
**domus, -i f.:** house, home  
**duco, -ere, duxi, ductus:** lead  
**dum:** while, until; see also Introduction 7.C

### E e

- ego, mei, mihi, me:** I, me (*personal*); myself (*reflexive*)

**enim:** indeed, for

**eo, ire, ivi(ii), itus:** to go

**et:** and, even, also

**etiam:** also, even

**ex, e:** out of, from (+ *abl.*)

### F f

- facio, -ere, feci, factus:** to make, do  
**femina, -ae f.:** woman  
**filia, -ae f.:** daughter  
**filius, -i m.:** son  
**frater, fratris m.:** brother; monk

### H h

- habeo, -ere, -ui, -itus:** to have, hold; to consider  
**hic, haec, hoc:** this; these (*pl.*)  
**homo, hominis m.:** a human being; man; see also Introduction 7.E

### I i

- idem, eadem, idem:** the same  
**ille, -a, -ud:** that  
**in:** in, on, at (+ *abl.*); into, about (+ *acc.*)  
**inter:** between, among; during (+ *acc.*)  
**ipse, -a, -um:** himself, herself, itself  
**is, ea, id:** he, she, it  
**ita (adv.):** thus, so  
**itaque:** therefore, and so  
**iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussus:** order, command

### M m

- magnus, -a, -um:** large, great  
**mater, matris f.:** mother  
**meus, mea, meum:** my  
**mitto, -ere, misi, missus:** to send  
**mori, mori, mortuus sum:** to die

## Common Vocabulary

### N n

- nam:** for, indeed  
**natura, -ae f.:** nature  
**ne:** that not, lest (+ *subjunctive*)  
**nec (adv.):** nor, and not  
**nisi:** if not, except, unless  
**nomen, nominis n.:** name  
**non (adv.):** not, by no means, no  
**noster, nostra, nostrum:** our  
**nunc (adv.):** now

### O o

- ob:** on account of, against (+ *acc.*)  
**omnis, -e:** each, every

### P p

- parvus, -a, -um:** small, little  
**pater, patris m.:** father  
**Paulus, -i m.:** Paul  
**pax, pacis f.:** peace; harmony  
**pecunia, -ae f.:** money  
**possum, posse, potui, -:** to be able, be possible  
**post:** (*adv.*) behind, afterwards; after (+ *acc.*)  
**puto, -are, -avi, -atus:** think, reckon

### Q q

- quam:** how; than (*comparative*)  
**-que:** and (*enclitic*)  
**qui, quae, quod:** who, which, what  
**quidem (adv.):** certainly, at least  
**quod:** because, as far as  
**quoque (adv.):** likewise, also, too

### R r

- regina, -ae f.:** queen  
**res, rei f.:** a thing, event, matter  
**rex, regis m.:** king  
**rogo, -are, -avi, -atus:** to ask

### S s

- saepe (adv.):** often  
**sed:** but, however  
**semper (adv.):** always  
**si:** if  
**sine:** without (+ *abl.*)  
**soror, -oris f.:** sister  
**sub:** under (+ *abl.*)  
**sum, esse, fui, futurus:** to be, exist  
**suus, sua, suum:** his own, her own, its own

### T t

- tamen (adv.):** yet, nevertheless, still  
**tantus, -a, -um:** so much, so great  
**tum (adv.):** then, next

### U u

- unus, -a, -um:** one  
**urbs, urbis f.:** city  
**ut:** as, when (+ *indic.*); so that, with the result that, that (+ *subj.*)

### V v

- ve:** or (*enclitic*)  
**vel:** or  
**venio, -ire, veni, ventus:** come  
**vir, viri m.:** man  
**vita, -ae f.:** life; career  
**voco, -are, -avi, -atus:** to call, name

